

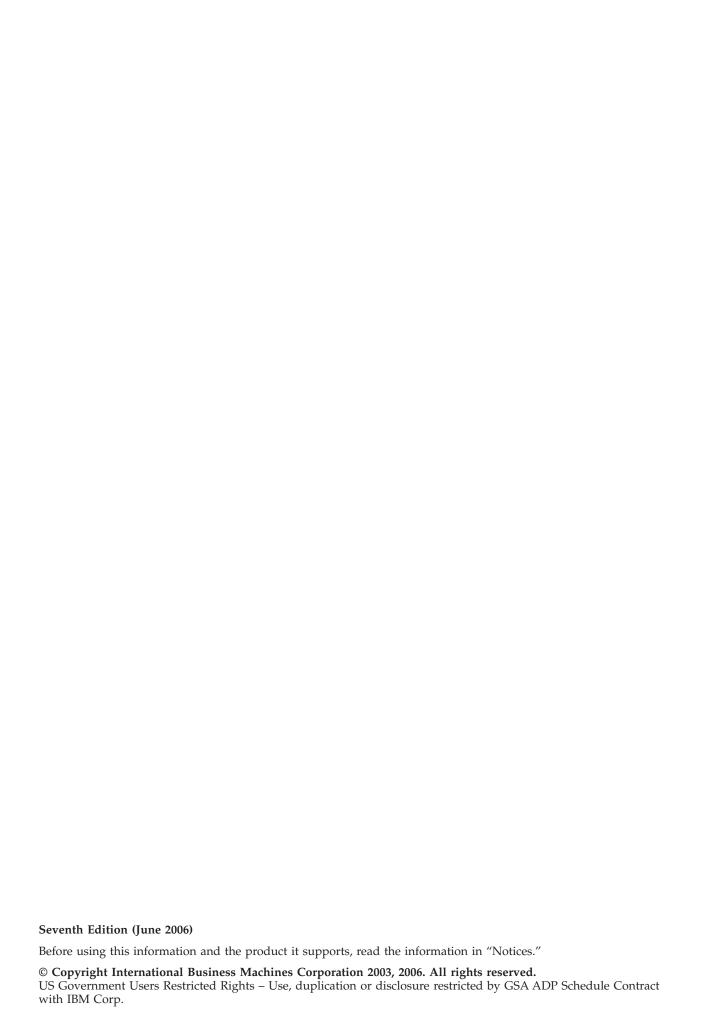
Host Attachment User's Guide

Version 4.1.0



Host Attachment User's Guide

Version 4.1.0



Contents

Figures vii	SAN boot support for HP AlphaServer hosts 21 Copy Services support for HP AlphaServer hosts 22
Tables ix	Chapter 4. Attaching to an IBM System
About this guide xi	p5, eServer pSeries, or RS/6000 AIX
Who should use this guide xi	host
Summary of changes	Attachment requirements for IBM System p hosts Supported AIX environments for IBM System p
Volume Controller Host Attachment Guide xi	hosts
Emphasis xiii SAN Volume Controller library and related	Supported HBAs for IBM System p hosts 24 Supported drivers and firmware for IBM System
publications xiii Related Web sites xv	p hosts
How to order IBM publications xv	p hosts
How to send your comments xv	Configuring the AIX operating system 24 Configuring for fast fail and dynamic tracking 25
Chapter 1. Host attachment overview for	Multipath support for IBM System p hosts 25
the IBM System Storage SAN Volume	Clustering support for IBM System p hosts 26
	SAN boot support for IBM System p hosts 27
Controller	Support for dynamically increasing virtual disk
Support for open-systems hosts	size
LUNs	Support for VIO for IBM System p 27
Copy Services support	Known issues and limitations
Chapter 2. Attaching to an HP 9000 host 5	
Attachment requirements for HP 9000 hosts 5	Chapter 5. Attaching to IBM pSeries
Supported environments for HP 9000 hosts 5	and JS20 hosts running the Linux
Supported HBAs for HP hosts 5	operating system
Supported drivers and firmware for HP hosts 6	
Installing HBA drivers for HP 9000 hosts 6	Attachment requirements for pSeries and JS20 hosts 31 Supported Linux distributions for pSeries and
Configuring the HP 9000 host operating system 6	JS20 hosts
Multipath support for HP 9000 hosts 7	Supported HBAs for pSeries and JS20 hosts
Clustering support for HP 9000 hosts 8	running the Linux operating system
SAN boot support for HP 9000 hosts 9	Supported drivers and firmware for pSeries and
Configuring physical volume timeout 10	JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system . 32
Known issues and limitations	Installing the HBA on a host running the Linux
Adapter shown as offline	operating system
Setting domain IDs	Installing a QLogic HBA driver
Attaching to clusters	Installing an Emulex HBA driver
ServiceGuard Issues	Configuring the Linux operating system 33
Chapter 2 Attaching to an UD	Multipath support for pSeries and JS20 hosts 34
Chapter 3. Attaching to an HP	Clustering support on hosts running the Linux
AlphaServer host	operating system
Attachment requirements for HP AlphaServer hosts 13 Supported environments for HP AlphaServer	SAN boot support on pSeries and JS20 hosts 35 Defining the number of disks for pSeries and
hosts	JS20 hosts
Supported HBAs for HP hosts	Setting queue depth with QLogic HBAs 35
Supported drivers and firmware for HP hosts 13	Setting queue depth for Emulex HBAs 36
Installing adapter drivers for HP AlphaServer hosts 14	SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for
Configuring the Tru64 UNIX host operating system 15	pSeries and JS20 hosts
Configuring kernel SCSI parameters 16	
Configuring AdvFS parameters	Chapter 6. Attaching to IBM System z9
Configuring the OpenVMS operating system 18	or eServer zSeries hosts running the
Multipath support for HP AlphaServer hosts 20	Linux operating system 41
Clustering support for HP AlphaServer hosts 21	Emax operating system

| |

Attachment requirements for System z9 and zSeries hosts running Linux operating systems 41	Supported environments for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems 57
Supported Linux distributions for System z9 and	Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows
zSeries hosts	2000 and 2003 operating systems
running Linux operating systems 41	running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating
Supported drivers and firmware for System z9	systems
and zSeries hosts	Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows
Installing and configuring the HBA on System z9	2000 or 2003 operating system
and zSeries hosts	Installing the HBA driver for hosts running the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system
z9 and zSeries hosts	Installing DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA
Multipath support for System z9 and zSeries	drivers
hosts	Installing an Emulex HBA driver 59
Clustering support on hosts running the Linux	Configuring the HBA on a host running the
operating system	Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system 60
SAN boot support on System z9 and zSeries hosts	Configuring the DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003
Defining the number of disks on System z9 and	operating systems 60
zSeries hosts	Configuring the Emulex HBA for hosts running
SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for	Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems 61
System z9 and zSeries hosts	Configuring the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating
Known issues and limitations for System z9 and	System
zSeries hosts	Multipath support for host running the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating system
Chapter 7. Attaching to an Intel host	Clustering support for hosts running Windows
running the Linux operating system 47	2000 and 2003 operating systems 64
Attachment requirements for Intel hosts running the	SAN boot support for hosts running Windows
Linux operating system	2000 and 2003 operating systems 65
Supported Linux distributions for Intel hosts 47	Known issues and limitations for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems
Supported HBAs for Intel hosts running the	windows 2000 and 2005 operating systems
Linux operating system	Chapter 9. Attaching to a host running
running the Linux operating system 48	the Microsoft Windows 2003 64-bit
Installing the HBA on a host running the Linux	operating system 69
operating system 48	Attachment requirements for hosts running
Installing a QLogic HBA driver on a host running	Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems 69
the Linux operating system	Supported environments for hosts running
Configuring the Linux operating system 49 Multipath support for Intel hosts running the	Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems 69 Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows
Linux operating system	2003 64-bit operating systems
Clustering support on hosts running the Linux	Supported drivers and firmware for hosts
operating system	running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems . 70
SAN boot support on Intel hosts running the	Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows
Linux operating system 50 Defining the number of disks on Intel hosts	2003 64-bit operating system
running the Linux operating system 51	Installing the HBA driver for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
Setting queue depth with QLogic HBAs 51	Installing DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA
SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for	drivers
Intel hosts running the Linux operating system . 51	Installing an Emulex HBA driver 71
Known issues and limitations	Configuring the HBA on a host running the
LUN set offline	Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
Waxintum me system size mints v Disk size	Configuring the DS4000-supported or QLogic
Chapter 8. Attaching to a host running	HBA for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems
the Microsoft Windows 2000 or 2003	Configuring the Emulex HBA for hosts running
32-bit operating system 57	the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system 73
Attachment requirements for hosts running	Configuring the Windows 2003 64-bit operating
Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems 57	system

Multipath support for hosts running the	Supported drivers and firmware for Sun SPARC
Windows 2003 64-bit operating system 74	hosts
Clustering support for hosts running Windows	Installing the HBA on a Sun SPARC host 88
2003 64-bit operating systems	Installing the HBA driver 88
SAN boot support for hosts running Windows	Installing a JNI HBA driver 88
2003 64-bit operating systems	Installing an Emulex HBA driver 89
	Installing a QLogic HBA driver 90
Chapter 10. Attaching to a host running	Configuring the HBA on the Sun SPARC host 90
the Microsoft Windows NT operating	Configuring the JNI HBA
	Configuring the Emulex HBA for Sun SPARC
system	hosts
Attachment requirements for hosts running the	Configuring the QLogic HBA for Sun SPARC
Windows NT operating system	hosts
Supported environments for hosts running the	Configuring the Solaris operating system 94
Windows NT operating system	Setting the Sun SPARC host parameters for the
Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows	HBA
NT operating system	Discovering new LUNs 95
Supported drivers and firmware for hosts	Multipath support for Sun SPARC hosts 97
running the Windows NT operating system 78	Clustering support for Sun SPARC hosts 97
Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows	SAN boot support for Sun SPARC hosts 98
NT operating system	
Installing a DS4000-series or QLogic HBA driver 78	Chapter 13. Attaching to a host
Configuring the DS4000-series or QLogic HBA for	running a VMware operating system . 103
hosts running the Windows NT operating system . 79	Attachment requirements for hosts running
Configuring the Windows NT operating system 80	VMware operating systems
Multipath support for hosts running the	Supported environments for hosts running
Windows NT operating system 81	VMware operating systems 103
Clustering support for hosts running the	Supported HBAs for hosts running VMware
Windows NT operating system 81	operating systems
SAN boot support for hosts running the	Supported drivers and firmware for hosts
Windows NT operating system 82	running VMware operating systems 104
Configuration for availability and recovery 82	Installing the HBA on a host running a VMware
Setting the TimeOutValue registry 82	operating system
	Installing the HBA drivers for hosts running
Chapter 11. Attaching to a host running	VMware operating systems
a Novell NetWare operating system 83	Configuring the VMware operating system 104
Attachment requirements for hosts running NetWare	Multipath support for hosts running VMware
operating systems 83	operating systems
Supported NetWare environments 83	Clustering support for hosts running VMware
Supported HBAs for hosts running NetWare	operating systems
operating systems 83	SAN boot support for hosts running VMware
Supported drivers and firmware for hosts	operating systems
running NetWare operating systems 83	operating systems
Installing an HBA on a host running NetWare	Chantar 1/ Fibra abannal nort nama
operating systems	Chapter 14. Fibre-channel port name
Installing the HBA driver on hosts running NetWare	identification 107
operating systems	Locating the WWPN for an HP host 107
Configuring the NetWare operating system 84	Locating the WWPN for an IBM System p5,
Multipath support for hosts running NetWare	eServer, or an RS/6000 AIX host
operating systems	Locating the WWPN for a host running the Linux
Clustering support for hosts running NetWare	operating system
operating systems	Locating the WWPN for a host running the
SAN boot support for hosts running NetWare	Microsoft Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system . 108
operating systems	Locating the WWPN for a host running the
	Windows NT operating system 108
Chapter 12. Attaching to a Sun SPARC	Locating the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host 109
host	Locating the WWPNs for a host running a
Attachment requirements for Sun SPARC hosts 87	VMware operating system 109
Supported HRAs for Sup SPARC hosts . 87	Accessibility 111

| |

İ

Notices	Avis de conformité à la réglementation
Trademarks	d'Industrie Canada
Electronic emission notices	Industry Canada compliance statement 116
China Class A EMC compliance in Simplified	United Kingdom telecommunications
Chinese	requirements
Federal Communications Commission (FCC)	European Union (EU) statement 116
statement	Radio protection for Germany
Japanese Voluntary Control Council for	Taiwan Class A compliance statement 117
Interference (VCCI) statement	
Korean Government Ministry of Communication	Glossary
(MOC) statement	•
New Zealand compliance statement 116	Index
International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)	mack
statement	

Figures

	1.	Example of the wwidmgr command 14	15.	Example of assigning a Linux system ID to the	
	2.	Example of output created by issuing the		partition	. 38
		hwmgr view devices command	16.	Example of creating a file with the mke2fs	
	3.	Example of output created by issuing the		command	. 38
		hwmgr show scsi command 16	17.	Example of creating a file with the mkfs	
	4.	Setting the AdvfsIORetryControl parameter 18		command	. 39
	5.	Example entries to maintain the	18.	Example of range of devices for an Intel host	
		AdvfsIORetryControl parameter 18		running the Linux operating system when not	
	6.	Configuring the OpenVMS HBAs 18		using the SDD	. 52
	7.	Example output from the boot process 19	19.	Example of range of devices for an Intel host	
	8.	Example output for assigning VDisks 19		running the Linux operating system when	
	9.	Example output		using the SDD	. 52
	10.	Example output	20.	Example of different options for the fdisk	
	11.	Example of range of devices for a host running		utility	. 53
		the Linux operating system when not using	21.	Example of a primary partition on the disk	
		the SDD		/dev/sdb	
	12.	Example of range of devices for a host running	22.	Example of assigning a Linux system ID to the	
		the Linux operating system when using the		1	. 54
		SDD	23.	Example of creating a file with the mke2fs	
	13.	Example of different options for the fdisk		command	. 54
		utility	24.	Example of creating a file with the mkfs	
	14.	Example of a primary partition on the disk		command	. 55
		/dev/sdb			

Tables

ı	1.	Overview of the Cisco MDS Family platform 1		15.	Configuration maximums for LVM1	4.4
'						41
	2.	Overview of supported host systems 2		16.	Configuration maximums for on Intel hosts	F C
	3.	Configuration maximums for SDD on HP 9000		4-	running the Linux operating system	50
		hosts 8		17.		
	4.	Clustering support for HP 9000 hosts 9			systems	57
	5.	Configuration maximums for multipathing on		18.	Recommended configuration file parameters	
		HP AlphaServer hosts			for the Emulex HBA	61
	6.	Clustering support for HP AlphaServer hosts 21		19.	Configuration maximums for Windows	63
	7.	Supported IBM System p host operating		20.	Clustering software supported for hosts that	
		systems			run Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems	64
ı	8.	Configuration maximums for SDD and	- 1	21.	Configuration maximums for MPIO/SDDDSM	
ĺ		SDDPCM on IBM System p AIX hosts 26	i		· ·	74
İ	9.	Clustering software supported for IBM System	•	22.	Supported operating systems for hosts that run	
İ		p AIX hosts			the Windows NT operating system	
	10.	Supported Linux distributions for pSeries and		23.	Configuration maximums for SDD for	•
	10.	JS20 hosts		20.	Windows	Q 1
	11.	Supported HBAs for pSeries and JS20 hosts		24.	Clustering software supported for hosts	01
	11.			44.		0
	10	running the Linux operating system 32		0.5	running a NetWare operating system	00
	12.	Configuration maximums for SDD on pSeries	!	25.	HBAs utilized by the SAN Volume Controller	0.0
		and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating	ı		Sun SPARC hosts	88
		system		26.	Supported operating systems for hosts	
	13.	Supported Linux distributions for System z9			1 0 7	103
		and zSeries hosts 41		27.	Configuration maximums for VMware	
	14.	Supported HBAs for System z9 and zSeries			multipathing software	105
		hosts running the Linux operating system 42			-	

About this guide

This guide provides information that is required when attaching the IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller to an open-systems host with fibre-channel adapters.

Each chapter describes how to attach a SAN Volume Controller to a specific open-systems host with fibre-channel adapters.

Who should use this guide

The *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Host Attachment Guide* is intended for system administrators or others who install and use the SAN Volume Controller.

Before using the SAN Volume Controller, you should have an understanding of storage area networks (SANs), the storage requirements of your enterprise, and the capabilities of your storage units.

Summary of changes

This document contains terminology, maintenance, and editorial changes.

Technical changes or additions to the text and illustrations for the latest release are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

The topics in the summary of changes describe new functions that have been added to this release and to the previous release.

Summary of changes for SC26-7905-00 SAN Volume Controller Host Attachment Guide

Listed below are changes to this guide since the previous edition (SC26-7563-05).

New information

This edition includes the following new information:

- The SAN Volume Controller now supports the following host systems:
 - HPUX 11iv2
 - NetApp vSeries
 - Open VMS
 - RHEL 4.0
 - Solaris 10
 - Windows® 64-bit
- The following new topics were added:
 - Configuring kernel SCSI parameters
 - Configuring AdvFS parameters
 - Configuring the OpenVMS operating system
 - Discovering and assigning VDisks

- Attaching to a host running the Microsoft[®] Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Attachment requirements for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Supported environments for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Installing the HBA driver for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Configuring the HBA on a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Installing an Emulex HBA driver
- Configuring the Emulex HBA for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Configuring the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Multipath support for host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- SDD dynamic pathing on hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- MPIO dynamic pathing Clustering support for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- SAN boot support for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Configuring for SAN boot for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Configuring the DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system
- Migrating existing SAN boot images
- Support for VIO for IBM System p5

Changed information

This section lists the updates that were made in this document.

 There is a new SAN Volume Controller supported model. The SAN Volume Controller is now documented by model number. For example, this publication states three SAN Volume Controller models types: SAN Volume Controller 2145-4F2, the SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F2, and the new SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F4.

Note: Text that refers to the SAN Volume Controller refers to a generic SAN Volume Controller but can also be refer to all SAN Volume Controller models. When the SAN Volume Controller is referred to as the SAN Volume Controller 2145-4F2, the SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F2, or the SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F4, then the specific SAN Volume Controller is designated.

The SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F2 and the SAN Volume Controller 2145-8F4 are very similar in layout and function, and are therefore documented together in several topics.

• Changes were made to the maximum queue depth topic.

Removed information

There was no information removed from this document.

Emphasis

Different typefaces are used in this guide to show emphasis.

The following typefaces are used to show emphasis:

Boldface	Text in boldface represents menu items and command names.
Italics	Text in <i>italics</i> is used to emphasize a word. In command syntax, it is used for variables for which you supply actual values, such as a default directory or the name of a cluster.
Monospace	Text in monospace identifies the data or commands that you type, samples of command output, examples of program code or messages from the system, or names of command flags, parameters, arguments, and name-value pairs.

SAN Volume Controller library and related publications

A list of other publications that are related to this product are provided to you for your reference.

The tables in this section list and describe the following publications:

- The publications that make up the library for the IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller
- · Other IBM publications that relate to the SAN Volume Controller

SAN Volume Controller library

The following table lists and describes the publications that make up the SAN Volume Controller library. Unless otherwise noted, these publications are available in Adobe portable document format (PDF) from the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Title	Description	Order number
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: CIM agent Developer's Reference	This reference guide describes the objects and classes in a Common Information Model (CIM) environment.	GA32-0552
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Command-Line Interface User's Guide	This guide describes the commands that you can use from the SAN Volume Controller command-line interface (CLI).	SC26-7903

Title	Description	Order number
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide	This guide provides guidelines for configuring your SAN Volume Controller.	SC26-7902
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Host Attachment Guide	This guide provides guidelines for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your host system.	SC26-7905
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide	This guide includes the instructions the service representative uses to install the SAN Volume Controller.	GC26-7900
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Planning Guide	This guide introduces the SAN Volume Controller and lists the features you can order. It also provides guidelines for planning the installation and configuration of the SAN Volume Controller.	GA32-0551
IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Service Guide	This guide includes the instructions the service representative uses to service the SAN Volume Controller.	GC26-7901
IBM System Safety Notices	This guide contains the danger and caution notices for the SAN Volume Controller. The notices are shown in English and in numerous other languages.	G229-9054
IBM System Storage Master Console for SAN File System and SAN Volume Controller: Installation and User's Guide	This guide includes the instructions on how to install and use the SAN Volume Controller Console	GC30-4090

Other IBM publications

The following table lists and describes other IBM publications that contain additional information related to the SAN Volume Controller.

Title	Description	Order number
IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide	This guide describes the IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver Version 1.5 for TotalStorage Products and how to use it with the SAN Volume Controller. This publication is referred to as the IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide.	SC30-4131

Related Web sites

The following Web sites provide information about the SAN Volume Controller or related products or technologies.

Type of information	Web site
SAN Volume Controller support	http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
Technical support for IBM storage products	http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/

How to order IBM publications

The publications center is a worldwide central repository for IBM product publications and marketing material.

The IBM publications center

The IBM publications center offers customized search functions to help you find the publications that you need. Some publications are available for you to view or download free of charge. You can also order publications. The publications center displays prices in your local currency. You can access the IBM publications center through the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/

Publications notification system

The IBM publications center Web site offers you a notification system for IBM publications. Register and you can create your own profile of publications that interest you. The publications notification system sends you a daily e-mail that contains information about new or revised publications that are based on your profile.

If you want to subscribe, you can access the publications notification system from the IBM publications center at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/

How to send your comments

Your feedback is important to help us provide the highest quality information. If you have any comments about this book or any other documentation, you can submit them in one of the following ways:

• e-mail

Submit your comments electronically to the following e-mail address: starpubs@us.ibm.com

Be sure to include the name and order number of the book and, if applicable, the specific location of the text you are commenting on, such as a page number or table number.

Mail

Fill out the Readers' Comments form (RCF) at the back of this book. If the RCF has been removed, you can address your comments to:

International Business Machines Corporation RCF Processing Department Department 61C 9032 South Rita Road Tucson, Arizona 85775-4401 U.S.A.

Chapter 1. Host attachment overview for the IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller

The IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller supports IBM and non-IBM storage systems hosts so that you can consolidate storage capacity and workloads for open-systems hosts into a single storage pool. The storage pool can then be managed from a central point on the SAN (storage area network).

By allowing you to attach hosts from different vendors, the SAN Volume Controller offers you the following advantages:

- Makes your storage easier to manage
- · Increases utilization of your data
- Allows you to apply advanced Copy Services functions across storage systems from many different vendors

Support for open-systems hosts

You can attach the SAN Volume Controller to open-systems hosts that use the small computer system interface-fibre channel protocol (SCSI-FCP). You can also attach the SAN Volume Controller to iSCSI (small computer system interface over internet protocol) hosts that are attached to a Cisco fabric.

The SAN Volume Controller supports connection to the Cisco MDS 9000 SAN-OS Software Release 2.1 for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family platform with the attached iSCSI hosts (in single path mode only) shown in Table 1.

Table 1. Overview of the Cisco MDS Family platform

Operating System	Drivers	Notes
Windows 2000 (32 bit only) (SP4)	Microsoft initiator driver rev 1.05a and Microsoft initiator driver rev 1.06	Clustering is not supported.
Windows 2003 (32 bit only) (SP1)	Microsoft initiator driver rev 1.06	
Red Hat EL Advanced Server 2.1	Linux initiator rev 3.6.2	
Red Hat EL Advanced Server 3.0		

Note: Guidelines for zoning iSCSI hosts and SAN Volume Controller:

In a conventional fibre-channel SAN, there are a number of SAN paths between a particular SAN Volume Controller I/O group and the server HBA ports that use the VDisks that are supplied by that I/O group. A multipathing device driver resolves these multiple paths into a single logical device on which the server can perform I/O. The multipathing device driver also provides failover and path recovery functions for SAN fabric paths that change or fail. The present iSCSI solution, however, only supports a single path between the iSCSI host network information center (NIC) and the SAN Volume Controller VDisk. There is no multipathing driver in the iSCSI host. Therefore, there is no recovery from errors and it is not possible to

concurrently upgrade the SAN Volume Controller firmware while maintaining connectivity with an iSCSI host system. It is, thus, inappropriate for the SAN Volume Controller to present the VDisk to multiple ports in the fibre-channel SAN. To prevent this, you must select a single SAN Volume Controller port in each SAN Volume Controller I/O group that is to be associated with each iSCSI host. Zoning is then applied in the Cisco MDS switch so that each iSCSI host can only see one SAN Volume Controller port in each SAN Volume Controller I/O group. If multiple iSCSI hosts are in use, the hosts should be evenly spread across the ports in each SAN Volume Controller I/O group. Issue the svctask mkvdiskhostmap command to ensure that each SAN Volume Controller VDisk is mapped to a single NIC in the server.

Hosts are attached to the SAN Volume Controller through a switched fibre-channel fabric. Each SAN Volume Controller fibre-channel adapter has two ports, and each port is identified by a worldwide port name (WWPN).

SAN Volume Controller does not limit the number of fibre-channel ports or host bus adapters (HBAs) that each connected host or host partition can have. Your connected hosts are limited only by the number of ports or HBAs that are supported by the multipathing device driver on the host (or host partition).

Table 2 provides an overview of the host systems that are supported by the SAN Volume Controller.

Table 2. Overview of supported host systems

Brand	Server host systems	Operating system
HP	HP 9000	HP-UX 11i
	nr 9000	HP-UX 11.0
	HP AlphaServer	Tru64 UNIX®
	-Campan TM DladaCamban [®] IC20	AIX®
	eServer [™] BladeCenter [®] JS20	Linux®
	eServer i5	AIX
	eServer iSeries TM	AIX
IBM®	eServer p5	AIX
	-C®	AIX
	eServer pSeries®	Linux
	eServer pSeries SP™	AIX
	eServer zSeries®	Linux
	RS/6000®	AIX
	RS/6000 SP	AIX
	System p5 TM	AIX
	System z9 [™]	Linux
Sun	SPARC servers	Solaris

Table 2. Overview of supported host systems (continued)

Brand	Server host systems	Operating system
		Linux
		Microsoft Windows 2000 Server
various	Intel-based	Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server
		Microsoft Windows 2003 Server
		Microsoft Windows NT®
		Novell NetWare
VMware	VMware ESX	various guest operating systems

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about current support information, including maximum configuration details, technical flashes, hints and tips, host systems, operating system levels, HBAs, cables, fabrics that IBM supports, and documentation about the SAN Volume Controller:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

LUNs

The SAN Volume Controller supports a maximum of 1024 LUNs per I/O group, with a maximum of 512 configured to any one host.

Note: Not all hosts support 512 LUNs.

Each virtual disk that is created on the SAN Volume Controller can be mapped to multiple HBA fibre-channel ports in a given host. There can also be multiple paths across the SAN. For these reasons, each host must run multipathing software, such as the subsystem device driver (SDD). The multipathing software manages the many paths that are available to the virtual disk and presents a single storage device to the operating system. The SAN Volume Controller supports a variety of multipathing software. The specific multipathing software that is supported by the SAN Volume Controller depends on the host operating system with which it is being used.

- The number of paths through the network from the SAN Volume Controller nodes to a host must not exceed 8. Configurations in which this number is exceeded are unsupported.
 - Each SAN Volume Controller node has four ports and each I/O group has two SAN Volume Controller nodes. Therefore, without any zoning, the number of paths to a VDisk would be 8 × the number of host ports.
 - This rule exists to limit the number of paths that must be resolved by the multipathing device driver.

If you want to restrict the number of paths to a host, zone the switches so that each HBA port is zoned with one SAN Volume Controller port for each node in the cluster. If a host has multiple HBA ports, zone each port to a different set of SAN Volume Controller ports to maximize performance and redundancy.

1

Copy Services support

You can use the IBM FlashCopy[®], IBM Metro Mirror, or IBM Global Mirror Copy Services functions for SAN Volume Controller across the host storage systems to help further simplify operations.

When you use the FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, or Global Mirror functions, keep in mind the following requirements and restrictions:

- If you require concurrent read/write access to both the source and target volumes, be sure that the source volume resides on a different host system than the target volume. A copy operation from a source volume to a target volume that is on the same host system creates a target volume with the same identification as the source volume. The host system sees two identical volumes.
- When the copy operation creates the same identification for the target volume as for the source volume, you cannot distinguish one from the other. Therefore, you might not be able to access the original data.
- The target volume and the source volume can be on the same host system for a Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, or FlashCopy operation only under the following conditions:
 - For the AIX operating system, when the host is using a logical volume manager (LVM) with recreatevg command.
 - For HP, when the host is using LVM with the **vfchigid -f** command.
 - For the AIX and Sun operating systems, when the host is *not* using an LVM.
 - For host systems that run the VERITAS Volume Manager, the SAN Volume
 Controller sets a bit in the inquiry data that enables the VERITAS Volume
 Manager to distinguish between the source and target virtual disks (VDisks)
 for those mapping states where the source and target VDisks could be
 identical copies.
 - For any host system, when the host system can distinguish between a source and a target volume that has the same identification.
- Global Mirror relationships can only share a consistency group with another Global Mirror relationship. The consistency group is defined when the first relationship is added to the group, which automatically assigns the type (Metro or Global) of relationship. The total number of supported consistency groups is shared between Metro Mirror and Global Mirror. Metro Mirror and Global Mirror relationships cannot belong to the same consistency group.

Chapter 2. Attaching to an HP 9000 host

This information provides the requirements and instructions for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an HP 9000 host.

Attachment requirements for HP 9000 hosts

You must be aware of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an HP 9000 host.

You must meet the following requirements before you can attach the SAN Volume Controller to your HP 9000 host system:

• Check the LUN limitations for your host system. Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters that are installed in the server to manage the total LUNs that you want to attach.

Note: If you want to use more than eight LUNs per SCSI target with an HP 9000 host, you must set the type attribute to hpux when you create the host object using the SAN Volume Controller command-line interface or the SAN Volume Controller Console.

- Ensure that you have the documentation for your HP system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide.* All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site:
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and version levels
 on your host. See the supported software levels for the SAN Volume Controller
 at the following Web site for details about the release level for your operating
 system:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported environments for HP 9000 hosts

Ensure that your HP 9000 hosts use a supported operating system and level.

The SAN Volume Controller supports HP 9000 hosts that run the operating systems listed below:

- HP-UX 11.0
- HP-UX 11i v1
- HP-UX 11i v2

The following IBM Web page provides current interoperability information about supported HP operating system levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for HP hosts

Ensure that your HP hosts use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs and platform levels:

1

Supported drivers and firmware for HP hosts

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your HP hosts.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing HBA drivers for HP 9000 hosts

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) in your HP 9000 host, you must download and configure the appropriate HBA driver.

Perform the following tasks to install the adapter driver:

- 1. Obtain the appropriate HBA driver using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web page. Find the sections for the HP operating system and then the HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the driver is indicated on the hardware list.
 - b. Note the version number of the driver.
 - c. Obtain the driver from Hewlett-Packard.
- 2. Install the driver according to the documentation provided with the driver.

After installing the adapters and drivers, you can verify their status using the fcmsutil /dev/tdx command, where x is the number of the adapter, which normally begins with 0.

After storage has been configured and mapped to the host, you can discover the disks by running ioscan -f -n. The disks are discovered as IBM 2145 disks, and the number of discovered devices depends on the number of adapters and zoned paths to the SAN Volume Controller.

After discovering the disks, run insf -e to build the device nodes in the /dev/dsk and /dev/rdsk directories. When this is done, you can build your host disk devices using the subsystem device driver (SDD). For more information, see *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide*.

Note: If you use a Cisco MDS 9000 Family switch with an HP-UX 11i host, you must ensure that you enable the Cisco persistent FC (fibre channel) ID feature. See your Cisco manual for more information.

Configuring the HP 9000 host operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use the HP 9000 hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating system, the following tasks must be completed:

An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.

 You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapter (HBA) and driver on your host system.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your HP 9000 host system:

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).

Notes:

- The subsystem device driver (SDD) does not support the HP 9000 operating system in a clustering environment. Also note that SDD is not supported in the HP-UX 32-bit mode operating environment.
- To have failover protection on an open system, SDD requires a minimum of two fibre-channel adapters. The maximum number of supported fibre-channel adapters is four, a total of four fibre-channel ports.
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for an HP host" on page 107 You can locate the WWPN for an HP (Hewlett-Packard) host by following the steps in this topic.

Multipath support for HP 9000 hosts

The SAN Volume Controller supports multipathing for HP 9000 hosts.

Multipathing support is available using either of the following software:

- Subsystem device driver (SDD)
- HP PVLinks (physical volume links)

SDD dynamic pathing on HP 9000 hosts

HP 9000 hosts support subsystem device driver (SDD) dynamic pathing when you add more paths to a virtual disk (VDisk) or when you present a new VDisk to a host.

On the HP 9000, SDD is aware of the preferred paths that are set by SAN Volume Controller for each VDisk. During failover processing, SDD tries the first preferred path, then the next known preferred path, and so on, until it has tried all preferred paths. If SDD cannot find an available path using the preferred paths, it tries nonpreferred paths. If all paths are unavailable, the VDisk goes offline.

Under HP 9000, SDD performs load balancing across the preferred paths where appropriate.

PVLinks dynamic pathing on HP 9000

HP 9000 hosts support HP PVLinks (physical volume links) dynamic pathing when you add more paths to a virtual disk (VDisk) or when you present a new VDisk to a host.

Unlike the subsystem device driver (SDD), PVLinks does *not* balance I/O loads and is unaware of the preferred paths that are set by SAN Volume Controller for each VDisk. Therefore SDD is strongly recommended, unless you are using a clustering environment or if you are using a VDisk as your boot disk.

During failover processing, PVLinks uses a simple algorithm: it tries the first path, then the next known path, and so on, until it has tried all paths. If all paths are unavailable, the VDisk goes offline.

If you use PVLinks, keep the following configuration considerations in mind:

- When you create a volume group, be sure to perform the following actions:
 - Specify the primary path that you want the HP 9000 host to use when it accesses the physical volume that is presented by the SAN Volume Controller.
 This is the only path that can access the physical volume. (The preferred path to the VDisk set by the SAN Volume Controller is ignored.)
 - Ensure that the primary links to the physical volumes (and, thus, the load) are balanced over the host bus adapters, the fibre-channel switches, SAN Volume Controller nodes, and any other devices.
- When you add alternate paths to the physical volume and extend a volume group, add the new paths in the preferred order that you want the HP 9000 host to use if the primary path become unavailable. To avoid unnecessary node failover due to host bus adapter, fibre-channel link, or fibre-channel switch failure, ensure that the first alternate path that you add is from the same SAN Volume Controller node as the primary path.

Multipathing configuration maximums for HP 9000 hosts

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for the subsystem device driver (SDD) on HP 9000 hosts.

Table 3 provides the maximum virtual disks (VDisks) and paths per VDisk for SDD.

Table 5. Colliguration maximums for SDD on in 3000 nosts	Table 3. Configuration	maximums	for	SDD	on i	ΗP	9000	hosts
--	------------------------	----------	-----	-----	------	----	------	-------

Object	SDD maximum	Description
VDisk (HDisk)	512	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the SDD (per host object).
Paths per VDisk	4	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk.

Coexistence of SDD and PVLinks on HP 9000

If you want to use PVLinks (physical volume links) for multipathing a VDisk while the subsystem device driver (SDD) is installed, you must make sure that SDD does not configure a vpath for that VDisk.

To do this, add the serial number of any VDisks that you want SDD to ignore in the /etc/vpathmanualexcl.cfg file.

Note: If you are using the SAN boot function, SDD automatically ignores the boot VDisk.

Clustering support for HP 9000 hosts

The SAN Volume Controller provides clustering support for HP 9000 hosts.

Table 4 provides information about the supported cluster software and other information for clustering on an HP 9000 host.

Table 4. Clustering support for HP 9000 hosts

Operating system	Cluster software	Number of hosts in cluster
HP-UX 11i v2	ServiceGuard version 11.16 with PVLinks (physical volume links)	16
HP-UX 11i v1	ServiceGuard version 11.16 with PVLinks (physical volume links)	16
HP-UX 11.0	ServiceGuard version 11.14 with PVLinks	16

Note: SAN Volume Controller supports version A.01.00 of ServiceGuard Extension for Faster Failover (SGeFF).

Restriction: HP-UX does not currently support the use of high availability monitors to monitor disks presented by the SAN Volume Controller.

SAN boot support for HP 9000 hosts

SAN boot for HP 9000 hosts is supported by the SAN Volume Controller.

SAN boot is supported on HP-UX by using HP PVLinks (physical volume links) as the multipathing software on the boot device. PVLinks or the subsystem device driver (SDD) provides the multipathing support for the other devices that are attached to the system.

The following IBM Web site provides information about known restrictions for SAN boot support:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Migrating existing SAN boot images

If you have an HP host and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Perform the following steps to migrate your existing SAN boot images:

- 1. Shut down the host.
- 2. Perform the following configuration changes on the storage controller:
 - a. Remove all the image-to-host mappings from the storage controller.
 - b. Map the existing SAN boot image and any other disks being migrated to SAN Volume Controller control.
- 3. Zone one port of each host bus adapter (HBA) to one of the SAN Volume Controller ports that is associated with the I/O group for the target image-mode VDisk.
- 4. Perform the following configuration changes on the SAN Volume Controller:
 - a. Create an image-mode VDisk for the managed disk (MDisk) that contains the SAN boot image. Use the MDisk unique identifier to specify the correct MDisk.

- b. Create a host object and assign it to the HBA port that you zoned to SAN Volume Controller port in step 3 on page 9.
- c. Map the image mode VDisk to the host. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 0.
- d. Map the swap disk to the host, if required. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 1.
- 5. Change the boot address of the host by using the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the BIOS utility of the host during the booting process.
 - b. Set the primary boot path to the hardware path of the LUN mapped from the SAN Volume Controller.
- 6. Boot the host in single-path mode
- 7. Uninstall any multipathing driver that is unsupported for the HP host using the SAN Volume Controller.
- 8. Install subsystem device driver (SDD) if required.
- 9. If you installed SDD, restart the host in single-path mode to ensure that the SDD was properly installed.
- 10. Zone each HBA port to one port on each SAN Volume Controller node.
- 11. Add additional HBA ports to the host object that you created in step 4b.
- 12. Configure the HBA settings on the host by using the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the BIOS utility of the host during the booting process.
 - b. Set the alternate boot path to the hardware path of the boot disk using the HBA and SAN Volume Controller node that is not used by the primary boot path.
 - c. Exit the BIOS utility and finish booting the host.
- 13. Map any further VDisks to host as required.

Configuring physical volume timeout

Physical volumes (PV) can be multipathed with the subsystem device driver (SDD) or HP PVLinks.

You must set the PV timeout as follows:

- Physical volumes that are multipathed with SDD must have a PV timeout of 90 seconds.
- Physical volumes that are multipathed with PVLinks must have a PV timeout of 60 seconds. (The timeout default set by PVLinks is 4 minutes.)

Known issues and limitations

There are several known issues and limitations for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an HP 9000 host.

The following IBM support Web site provides for the most current information about known restrictions:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Adapter shown as offline

Host bus adapters on HP 9000 hosts sometimes display as offline.

This does not necessarily indicate a problem. For example, HP-UX will log out from the SAN Volume Controller if there is no file open to the SAN Volume Controller through that adaptor.

Fibre-channel host bus adapters typically are logged in and are online only when they are actively working. If there is no volume group that is assigned to the adapter or if the volume group is not in use, the adapter logs out and is shown as offline. This behavior is normal.

Setting domain IDs

Ī

ı

For HP 9000 hosts, there are several reasons why you might want to set the domain IDs prior to building the multiswitch fabric and prior to rezoning.

Consider the following reasons:

- When two active switches are joined, they determine if the domain ID is already in use as before. If there is a conflict it cannot be changed in an active switch. A conflict causes an active switch to fail.
- The domain ID identifies switch ports when you implement zoning using the domain and switch port number. If domain IDs are negotiated at every fabric start up, there is no guarantee that switch IDs will persist from one session to the next. If the switch ID changes, any zoning definitions become invalid.
- If the domain ID is changed after a SAN is set up, HP 9000 host systems can have difficulty logging back into the switch, and you might have to reconfigure the host reconfiguration or detect devices on the switch again.

Attaching to clusters

When you attach an HP 9000 host to a cluster that presents virtual disks (VDisks) from more than one I/O group, you must implement a specific configuration to immediately view any new disk mappings without having to reboot the host.

Each I/O group must present a VDisk on logical unit number (LUN) 0 to avoid reboots when presenting new LUNs.

ServiceGuard issues

Note these known issues when using ServiceGuard.

Starting ServiceGuard packages with degraded virtual disks

If you use ServiceGuard and PV links in an HP 9000 clustering environment, the package startup time can take from 20 to 60 minutes when you use the command vgchange -a e VolumeGroupName to start a package that contains a degraded virtual disk (VDisk).

To avoid a lengthy startup time, you can perform the following actions:

- Do not start packages on an HP 9000 cluster while upgrading the SAN Volume Controller cluster.
- Configure your HP-UX cluster so that each HP-UX node is running a package containing a VDisk from each input/output (I/O) group. This allows any automatic failover and failback to complete within a reasonable time.

Note: The lengthy startup time does not occur under the following circumstances:

- If the HP-UX host already has an active volume group containing a degraded VDisk from the same I/O group.
- If the HP-UX host booted while the VDisk was degraded.

Using a virtual disk as a cluster lock disk

ServiceGuard does not provide a way to specify alternate links to a cluster lock disk.

When you use a virtual disk (VDisk) as your lock disk in an HP 9000 clustering environment, the HP-UX node cannot access the lock disk when both of the following situations apply:

- The path that is defined for the FIRST_CLUSTER_LOCK_PV variable is unavailable.
- A 50-50 split in the quorum occurs.

To resolve this issue and to maintain redundancy, specify a different path to the lock disk for each HP-UX node in your cluster using the FIRST_CLUSTER_LOCK_PV variable in the cluster configuration ASCII file. For example, if you are configuring a two-node HP-UX cluster, set the path of FIRST_CLUSTER_LOCK_PV on HP-UX server A to the first SAN Volume Controller node (through one fibre-channel switch) and set the FIRST_CLUSTER_LOCK_PV for HP server B to the second node (through another fibre-channel switch).

Note: To determine that the paths to the lock disk are different on different machines, you must inspect the hardware path.

Chapter 3. Attaching to an HP AlphaServer host

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an HP AlphaServer host.

Attachment requirements for HP AlphaServer hosts

You must be aware of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an HP AlphaServer host.

You must meet the following requirements before you can attach the SAN Volume Controller to your HP AlphaServer host system:

- HP AlphaServer running the Tru64 UNIX operating system has a limit of 255 LUNs per target.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your HP AlphaServer Tru64 UNIX system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide.* All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and version levels on your host. See the supported software levels for the SAN Volume Controller at the following Web site for details about the release level for your operating system:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported environments for HP AlphaServer hosts

Ensure that your HP AlphaServer hosts use a supported operating system and level.

The SAN Volume Controller supports HP AlphaServer hosts that run on the Tru64 UNIX and OpenVMS operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HP AlphaServer operating system levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for HP hosts

Ensure that your HP hosts use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for HP hosts

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your HP hosts.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

I

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) in your HP AlphaServer host, you must download and configure the appropriate HBA driver.

Perform the following tasks to install the HBA driver:

- 1. Obtain the appropriate HBA driver using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the sections for the HP Tru64 operating system and the HBA that is installed on your host machine:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

The specific version of the driver is indicated on the hardware list.

- b. Note the version number for the driver.
- c. Obtain the driver from Hewlett-Packard.
- 2. Install the driver according to the documentation provided with the driver.
- 3. On the AlphaServer console, if required by the host, issue the following command:

set mode diag

You can then issue the wwidmgr –show adapter command to confirm that each adapter was properly installed.

4. Update the adapter firmware, if it is required.

Figure 1 provides an example of what you see when you type the **wwidmgr** commands.

```
P00>>>set mode diag
Console is in diagnostic mode
P00>>>wwidmgr -show adapter
polling kgpsa0 (KGPSA-CA) slot 5, bus 0 PCI, hose 1
kgpsaa0.0.0.5.1 PGA0
                        WWN 2000-0000-c922-69bf
polling kgpsa1 (KGPSA-CA) slot 3, bus 0 PCI, hose 0
kgpsab0.0.0.3.0 PGB0 WWN 2000-0000-c923-db1a
item adapter
                             WWN
                                           Cur. Topo
                                                      Next Topo
[ 0] kgpsab0.0.0.3.0 2000-0000-c923-db1a FABRIC
                                                      FABRIC
[ 1] kgpsaa0.0.0.5.1 2000-0000-c922-69 bf FABRIC
                                                      FABRIC
[9999] All of the above.
P00>>>wwidmgr -set adapter -item 9999 -topo fabric
polling kgpsa0 (KGPSA-CA) slot 5, bus 0 PCI, hose 1
kgpsaa0.0.0.5.1
                PGA0 WWN 2000-0000-c922-69bf
polling kgpsal (KGPSA-CA) slot 3, bus 0 PCI, hose 0
kgpsab0.0.0.3.0 PGB0
                             WWN 2000-0000-c923-db1a
P00>>>wwidmgr -show wwid
[0] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-0000 (ev:wwid0)
[1] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-0223 (ev:none)
[2] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-1143 (ev:none)
[3] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-0225 (ev:none)
[4] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-0001 (ev:none)
[5] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-022b (ev:none)
[6] UDID:-1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0185-0033-7000-0000-0000-0227 (ev:none)
```

Figure 1. Example of the wwidmgr command

Figure 1 shows the worldwide node name (WWNN). You must have the worldwide port name (WWPN) to configure the storage unit host attachment. If you use KGPSA adapters, you can determine the WWPN by replacing the "2" in

the WWNN with a "1". For the above example, the WWPN of KGPSA-CA is 1000-0000-c922-69bf. . The WWPNs are required to configure SAN Volume Controller host attachments.

After the Tru64 operating system is booted from the chosen disk (ex. dkd100), log into the system and verify that the disks are available and online by issuing the following command:

boot dkd100

Configuring the Tru64 UNIX host operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use Tru64 UNIX hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating system, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapter (HBA) and driver on your host system.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your Tru64 UNIX host system.

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Configure and map the storage to the host.
- 3. Discover the disks by using the **hwmgr scan scsi** command.

 The disks are discovered as IBM 2145 disks, and the number of discovered devices depends on the number of adapters and zoned paths to the SAN Volume Controller.
- 4. Optionally, check the status and number of attached disks by using the following commands:
 - hwmgr view devices (see Figure 2)
 - hwmgr show scsi (see Figure 3 on page 16)
 - hwmgr show components

Below are examples of the output created when issuing the previous commands.

HWID: Device Name	Mfg	Model	Location
4: /dev/dmapi/dmapi			
5: /dev/scp_scsi			
6: /dev/kevm			
104: /dev/disk/dsk0c	COMPAQ	BD03685A24	bus-1-targ-0-lun-0
105: /dev/disk/dsk1c	COMPAQ	BD036635C5	bus-1-targ-1-lun-0
106: /dev/disk/cdrom0c	TEAC	CD-W216E	bus-2-targ-0-lun-0
107: /dev/random			
108: /dev/urandom			
246: /dev/disk/dsk76c	IBM	2145	bus-0-targ-5-lun-0
247: /dev/disk/dsk77c	IBM	2145	bus-0-targ-5-lun-1
248: /dev/disk/dsk78c	IBM	2145	bus-0-targ-5-lun-2
249: /dev/disk/dsk79c	IBM	2145	bus-0-targ-5-lun-3
250: /dev/disk/dsk80c	IBM	2145	bus-4-targ-4-lun-4

Figure 2. Example of output created by issuing the hwmgr view devices command

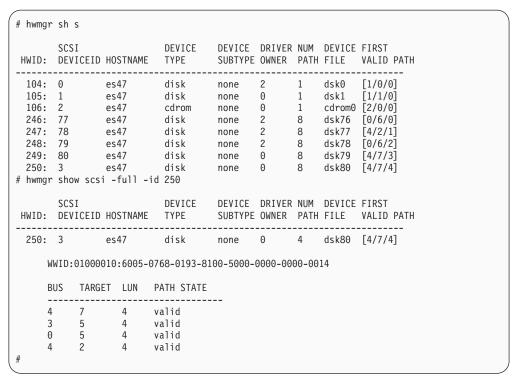


Figure 3. Example of output created by issuing the hwmgr show scsi command

Configuring kernel SCSI parameters

You can reduce the time needed to perform jobs that have substantial I/O by changing certain files within your application.

The two procedures described in "Procedure A" and "Procedure B" on page 17 can be performed to shorten the processing time of large I/O directed to one SAN Volume Controller disk array unit. Both procedures must be performed for this operation to be successful.

Procedure A

Procedure A applies to all versions of Tru64 Unix 4.0f, and later. For more information, see the Tru64 Unix man files for ddr.dbase and ddr_config information.

Perform the following steps to set up the Tru64 Unix device parameter database so that it is aware of the features that are specific to the SAN Volume Controller:

- 1. Quiesce the storage.
- 2. Place the host system in single-user mode and as *root*.
- 3. Edit /etc/ddr.dbase by including the following lines as an entry in the DISKS subsection:

```
SCSIDEVICE
   # Values for the IBM 2145
   Type = disk
   Name = "IBM" "2145"
   PARAMETERS:
       TypeSubClass
                         = hard disk, raid
       BadBlockRecovery = disabled
       DynamicGeometry
                         = true
       LongTimeoutRetry
                        = enabled
       PwrMgmt_Capable
                         = false
       TagQueueDepth
                         = 20
       ReadyTimeSeconds
                        = 180
       CMD WriteVerify
                         = supported
       InquiryLength
                         = 255
       RequestSenseLength = 255
```

4. Compile the ddr.dbase file by issuing the following command:

```
ddr config -c
```

5. Confirm the values by issuing the following command:

```
ddr config -s disk "IBM" "2145"
```

Procedure B

"Procedure B" requires a kernel rebuild.

Perform the following steps to set a kernel SCSI parameter:

- 1. Quiesce the storage.
- 2. Place the host system in single-user mode and as *root*.
- 3. Edit the /sys/data/cam_data.c file by changing the non- read/write command time-out values in the changeable disk driver time-out section.

```
Change from u_long cdisk_to_def = 10; /* 10 seconds */ to u_long cdisk_to_def = 60; /* 60 seconds */
```

4. Compile the cam_data.c file by issuing the following command:

```
deconfig -c "hostname"
```

where *hostname* is the name of the system kernel which can be found in the /sys/conf/ directory.

The following output displays an example of what you would see when issuing the -c "hostname" command:

```
#doconfig -c "ES47"

*** KERNEL CONFIGURATION AND BUILD PROCEDURE ***

Saving /sys/conf/ES47 as /sys/conf/ES47.bck

Do you want to edit the configuration file? (y/n) [n]: y

Using ed to edit the configuration file. Press return when ready, or type 'quit' to skip the editing session: quit

*** PERFORMING KERNEL BUILD ***
Working....Wed Mar 22 17:36:19 PST 2006

The new kernel is /sys/ES47/vmunix
#
```

Configuring AdvFS parameters

You must change the Tru64 5.1B Unix AdvfsIORetryControl parameter to prevent Tru64 UNIX advanced file system (AdvFS) from losing access to SAN Volume Controller disks.

As a result of temporary path loss, the AdvFS may lose access to the SAN Volume Controller disks. Therefore, the AdvfsIORetryControl parameter must be changed from its default value of 0. See Figure 4.

```
# sysconfig -q advfs AdvfsIORetryControl
advfs:
AdvfsIORetryControl = 0
# sysconfig -r advfs AdvfsIORetryControl=2
# sysconfig -q advfs AdvfsIORetryControl
advfs:
AdvfsIORetryControl = 2
```

Figure 4. Setting the AdvfsIORetryControl parameter

To prevent the AdvfsIORetryControl parameter from resetting after a reboot, enter the parameters in Figure 5.

```
# sysconfig -q advfs AdvfsIORetryControl > /tmp/advfs.out
# vi /tmp/advfs.out
advfs:
AdvfsIORetryControl=2
# sysconfigdb -af /tmp/advfs.out advfs
-> New entry in the /etc/sysconfigtab
# sysconfig -d advfs
advfs:
AdvfsIORetryControl = 2
```

Figure 5. Example entries to maintain the AdvfsIORetryControl parameter

Configuring the OpenVMS operating system

You must configure the OpenVMS operating system before you can use the xxx hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Configuring HBAs

To discover available VDisks, you must issue the init command at the Alpha Server Console level. See Figure 6.

```
P00>>>init (there will be various informational output)

P00>>>wwidmgr -show wwid

[1] UDID: 1 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0183-000e-7800-0000-0000-0001 (ev:none)

*

*

[16] UDID:16 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0183-000e-7800-0000-0000-0016 (ev:none)

[17] UDID:17 WWID:01000010:6005-0768-0183-000e-7800-0000-00017 (ev:none)
```

Figure 6. Configuring the OpenVMS HBAs

After you reboot the OpenVMS, log on and verify that the disks are available and are online. See Figure 7.

```
P00>>>boot dkd200
$ sho dev f
Device
                       Device
                                        Error
Name
                       Status
                                        Count
FTA0:
                       Offline
                                           0
Device
                       Device
                                        Error
Name
                       Status
                                        Count
FGA0:
                                           0
                       Online |
FGB0:
                       Online
                                           0
                                           3
FGC0:
                       Online
$ sho dev/fu FGC0:
Device FGCO:, device type KGPSA Fibre Channel, is online, shareable, error
   logging is enabled.
                                                                            0
   Error count
                                 3
                                       Operations completed
                                       Owner UIC
                                                                     [SYSTEM]
   Owner process
                           00000000
                                                            S:RWPL,O:RWPL,G,W
   Owner process ID
                                       Dev Prot
                                       Default buffer size
   Reference count
                                 0
                                                                            0
   Current preferred CPU Id
                                       Fastpath
   Current Interrupt CPU Id
   FC Port Name 1000-0000-C930-9156
                                       FC Node Name
                                                          2000-0000-C930-9156
```

Figure 7. Example output from the boot process

Discovering and assigning VDisks with OpenVMS

OpenVMS cannot recognize VDisks without issuing a UDID value.

Although many other operating systems using AlphaServer platforms do not use UDID, for OpenVMS, UDID must be issued after MDisk and related group/host information is set up. See Figure 8.

```
IBM_2145:svc_190:admin>svctask mkvdisk -mdiskgrp 0 -size 2 -unit gb -iogrp io_grp0 -mdisk mdisk0 -udid 10 -name ovms_10
IBM_2145:svc_190:admin> svctask mkvdiskhostmap -host gs160a ovms_10
```

Figure 8. Example output for assigning VDisks

When you use the procedure outlined in Figure 8, you can then use the same procedure for the rest of the new disks. See Figure 9.

Figure 9. Example output

Use the SYSMAN utility to discover new disks on the OpenVMS host. See Figure 10 on page 20.

SYSMAN> IO SCS	SI PATH VE	RIFY								
SYSMAN> IO AU										
SYSMAN> exit										
\$ sho dev d										
·										
Device		Device		Error	Volume	Free	Trans	Mnt		
Name		Status		Count	Label	Blocks	Count	Cnt		
GS160A\$DKA0:		Online		0						
\$1\$DGA10:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DGA11:	(GS160A)	Online		1						
\$1\$DGA12:	(GS160A)	Online		1						
\$1\$DGA13:	(GS160A)	Online		1						
\$1\$DGA14:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DGA15:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DGA16:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DGA17:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DGA10001:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DKD100:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DKD300:	(GS160A)	Mounted		0	GS160A_SYS	25643715	341	1		
\$1\$DKD500:	(GS160A)	Online		0	_					
\$1\$DQA0:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DQA1:	(GS160A)	Offline		1						
\$ init \$1\$dga:	16: dga16									
<pre>\$ init \$1\$dga?</pre>	17: dga17									
\$ mou \$1\$dga16										
%MOUNT-I-MOUNT	TED, DGA16	mounted	on _\$1\$D	GA16: (GS160A)					
\$ mou \$1\$dga17										
%MOUNT-I-MOUNT	TED, DGA17	mounted	on _\$1\$D	GA17: (GS160A)					
<pre>\$ init \$1\$dga?</pre>	10: dga10									
<pre>\$ init \$1\$dga?</pre>	11: dga11									
<pre>\$ mou \$1\$dga1:</pre>	l dga11									
%MOUNT-I-MOUN	ΓED, DGA11	mounted	on _\$1\$D	GA11: (GS160A)					
\$ sho dev d										
Davidaa		D		F	V - 1	F	T	M		
Device		Device		Error	Volume		Trans			
Name		Status Online		Count	Label	Blocks	Count	CIIL		
GS160A\$DKA0:	(001604)	Online Online		0						
\$1\$DGA10:	(GS160A)		21100	0	DCA11	/102050	1	1		
\$1\$DGA11:	(GS160A)	Mounted Online	αιιου	12 57	DGA11	4193950	1	1		
\$1\$DGA12:	(GS160A)									
\$1\$DGA13:	(GS160A)	Online		57 56						
\$1\$DGA14:	(GS160A)	Online		56						
\$1\$DGA15:	(GS160A)	Online	.11.	57	DCA16	4102050	,	1		
\$1\$DGA16:	(GS160A)	Mounted		12	DGA16	4193950	1	1		
\$1\$DGA17:	(GS160A)	Mounted	alloc	20	DGA17	4193950	1	1		
\$1\$DGA10001:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DKD100:	(GS160A)	Online		0	001604 696	05640570	241	1		
\$1\$DKD300:	(GS160A)	Mounted		0	GS160A_SYS	25642572	341	1		
\$1\$DKD500:	(GS160A)	Online		0						
\$1\$DQA0:	(GS160A)	Online		0 1						
\$1\$DQA1:	(GS160A)	Offline								

Figure 10. Example output

Multipath support for HP AlphaServer hosts

SAN Volume Controller supports the multipathing and load-balancing functions that are embedded into the Tru64 device driver.

Multipathing configuration maximums for HP AlphaServer hosts When you configure your HP AlphaServer hosts to support multipathing, keep in mind the multipathing configuration maximums.

Table 5 on page 21 provides the maximum virtual disks (VDisks) and paths per VDisk for multipathing.

Table 5. Configuration maximums for multipathing on HP AlphaServer hosts

Object	Maximum for multipathing support	Description
VDisk	255	The maximum number of VDisks per I/O group that can be supported for multipathing. Because HP AlphaServer hosts have a limit of 255 LUNs per target, there is a limit of 255 VDisks per I/O group.
Paths per VDisk	8	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk. The maximum paths per VDisk is limited by the path-failover time.

Clustering support for HP AlphaServer hosts

The SAN Volume Controller provides clustering support for HP AlphaServer hosts.

Table 6 provides information about the supported cluster software and other information for clustering on an HP AlphaServer host.

Table 6. Clustering support for HP AlphaServer hosts

Operating system	Cluster software	Number of hosts in cluster	
Tru64 UNIX	TruCluster Server	2	

Note: SAN Volume Controller disks can be used as quorum and member boot disks for the installation and configuration of the TruCluster Server software.

SAN boot support for HP AlphaServer hosts

SAN boot for HP AlphaServer hosts is supported by the SAN Volume Controller.

SAN boot is supported on HP AlphaServer hosts by using TruCluster Server software as the multipathing software on the boot device.

The following IBM Web site provides information about any known restrictions for SAN boot support:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Migrating existing SAN boot images

If you have an HP AlphaServer host and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Perform the following steps to migrate your existing SAN boot images:

- 1. Shut down the host.
- 2. Perform the following configuration changes on the storage controller:
 - a. Remove all the image-to-host mappings from the storage controller.
 - b. Map the existing SAN boot image and any other disks being migrated to SAN Volume Controller control.

- 3. Zone one port of each host bus adapter (HBA) to one of the SAN Volume Controller ports that is associated with the I/O group for the target image-mode VDisk.
- 4. Perform the following configuration changes on the SAN Volume Controller:
 - a. Create an image-mode VDisk for the managed disk (MDisk) that contains the SAN boot image. Use the MDisk unique identifier to specify the correct MDisk.
 - b. Create a host object and assign it to the HBA port that you zoned to SAN Volume Controller port in step 3.
 - c. Map the image mode VDisk to the host. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 0.
 - d. Map the swap disk to the host, if required. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 1.
- 5. Change the host's boot address by using the following steps:
 - a. Use the init command to re-initialize the system and use the wwidmgr utility before booting the operating system.
 - b. Set the primary boot path to the hardware path of the LUN mapped from the SAN Volume Controller.
- 6. Zone each HBA port to one port on each SAN Volume Controller node.
- 7. Add additional HBA ports to the host object that you created in step 4b.
- 8. Map any further VDisks to host as required.

Copy Services support for HP AlphaServer hosts

If you use the Tru64 UNIX advanced file system (AdvFS) option, you can map a FlashCopy target to the same machine as a FlashCopy source.

To use the same domain name, you must create a symbolic link to the new disk. Use the In -s /dev/disk/dskNc command to create a symbolic link in the /etc/fdmns/domain_name directory, where domain_name is the name of the target directory in which to place the link. Refer to your Tru64 UNIX operating system documentation for additional information.

Chapter 4. Attaching to an IBM System p5, eServer pSeries, or RS/6000 AIX host

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an IBM AIX host.

The SAN Volume Controller supports any of the following AIX hosts:

- IBM System p5[™]
- IBM eServer p5
- IBM eServer i5
- IBM eServer pSeries
- IBM eServer iSeries
- IBM eServer BladeCenter JS20
- IBM RS/6000

I

Ι

1

ı

From now on, these hosts will all be referred to as IBM System p hosts. For simplicity, this will include IBM System i partitions and IBM BladeCenter JS20 blades running the AIX operating system.

Attachment requirements for IBM System p hosts

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to IBM System p hosts running the AIX operating system.

Before you attach an IBM System p host, ensure that you meet the following prerequisites:

- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and version levels on your host, including any updates and APARS (Authorized Program Analysis Reports) for the operating system.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your host system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported AIX environments for IBM System p hosts

Ensure that each IBM System p host uses a supported operating system and level.

The SAN Volume Controller supports IBM System p hosts that run the operating systems listed on Table 7.

Table 7. Supported IBM System p host operating systems

Operating systems	Level
AIX	AIX 4
AIX	AIX 5

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported operating system levels for IBM System p hosts:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for IBM System p hosts

Ensure that your IBM System p AIX hosts use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for IBM System p hosts

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your IBM System p AIX hosts.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the host attachment script on IBM System p hosts

To attach a IBM System p AIX host, you must install the AIX host attachment script.

Perform the following steps to install the host attachment scripts:

- Access the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/software/sdd/downloading.html
- 2. Select Host Attachment Scripts for AIX.
- 3. Select either Host Attachment Script for SDDPCM or Host Attachment Scripts for SDD from the options, depending on your multipath device driver.
- 4. Download the AIX host attachment script for your multipath device driver.
- 5. Follow the instructions that are provided on the Web site or any readme files to install the script.

Configuring the AIX operating system

You must configure the AIX operating system before you can use IBM System p hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the AIX host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your AIX host system.

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).

| |

ı

I

I

I

Note: The subsystem device driver (SDD) and the subsystem device driver path control module (SDDPCM) for the AIX operating system support System p AIX host systems in a clustering environment. To have failover protection on an open system, these multipath drivers require a minimum of two fibre-channel adapters. The maximum number of fibre-channel ports that are supported in a single host (or logical partition) is four. This can be four single-port adapters or two dual-port adapters or a combination, as long as the maximum number of ports that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller does not exceed four.

- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for an IBM System p5, eServer, or an RS/6000 AIX host" on page 107

You can locate the WWPN for an IBM System p5, eServer or an RS/6000 AIX host by following the steps in this topic.

Configuring for fast fail and dynamic tracking

For hosts systems that run an AIX 5.2 or later operating system, you can achieve the best results by using the fast fail and dynamic tracking attributes.

Before configuring your host system to use these attributes, ensure that the host is running the AIX operating system version 5.2 or later.

Perform the following steps to configure your host system to use the fast fail and dynamic tracking attributes:

1. Issue the following command to set the Fibre Channel SCSI I/O Controller Protocol Device event error recovery policy to fast_fail for each fibre-channel adapter:

```
chdev -1 fscsi0 -a fc err recov=fast fail
```

The previous example command was for adapter fscsi0.

2. Issue the following command to enable dynamic tracking for each fibre-channel device:

```
chdev -1 fscsi0 -a dyntrk=yes
```

The previous example command was for adapter fscsi0.

Multipath support for IBM System p hosts

You must install multipathing software on all IBM System p AIX hosts that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On IBM System p hosts, the subsystem device driver (SDD) or the subsystem device driver path control module (SDDPCM) provide multipathing support.

Configuring SAN Volume Controller devices with multiple paths per LUN

The SAN Volume Controller supports multiple LUNs on a IBM System p AIX host.

The SAN Volume Controller supports multiple path configurations for a LUN. This means that you can have multiple hdisks (logical hard disks) available on the host for each physical LUN.

To configure multiple paths for all LUNs, add all of the adapters and fibre-channel cables and run the **cfgmgr** command. You might need to run **cfgmgr** multiple times. See the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide* for details about using the **cfgmgr** command.

Note: In addition to the **cfgmgr** command, you might also find that the subsystem device driver (SDD) **addpaths** and **datapath query device** commands are helpful when configuring multiple paths.

Multipathing configuration maximums for IBM System p hosts

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for IBM System p AIX hosts.

Table 8 provides the maximum virtual disks (VDisks) and paths per VDisk for the subsystem device driver (SDD) and the subsystem device driver path control module (SDDPCM).

Table 8. Configuration maximums for SDD and SDDPCM on IBM System p AIX hosts

Object	SDD maximum	SDDPCM maximum	Description
VDisk (HDisk)	512	N/A	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the SDD (per host object). The maximum number of VDisks is enforced by the SAN Volume Controller.
Paths per VDisk	4	N/A	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk. The maximum number of paths is a recommendation. The number of paths directly corresponds with the resulting path-failover time.

Clustering support for IBM System p hosts

The SAN Volume Controller provides clustering support for IBM System p AIX hosts

Table 9 provides information about the cluster software supported for IBM System p AIX hosts.

Table 9. Clustering software supported for IBM System p AIX hosts

Operating system	Cluster software	Vendor
AIX 5	HACMP TM	IBM
AIX 5	HACMP/XD	IBM

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported cluster software:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

SAN boot support for IBM System p hosts

If your IBM System p hosts use AIX operating system version 5.2 or later, the SAN Volume Controller supports the ability to SAN boot the operating system over fibre channel from a SAN Volume Controller VDisk.

You must use the subsystem device driver path control module (SDDPCM) multipath driver to achieve SAN boot support. Create an appropriately-sized installation VDisk and map it to the host. Proceed with the installation per the AIX installation instructions and, when prompted, select the previously-defined VDisk as the target installation disk.

Support for dynamically increasing virtual disk size

If your IBM System p AIX hosts use AIX 5.2 or a later AIX operating system version, the SAN Volume Controller supports the ability to dynamically increase virtual disk (VDisk) size.

The chvg command options provide the ability to grow the size of a physical volume that the Logical Volume Manager (LVM) uses, without interruptions to the use or availability of the system. Refer to the AIX publication System Management Guide: Operating System and Devices for more information.

Support for VIO for IBM System p

The SAN Volume Controller provides support for both single and dual VIO server configurations on IBM System p hosts that support VIO.

You can present the SAN Volume Controller VDisks to the VIO server host bus adapters (HBAs) using the same method as a standard AIX installation. For single VIO server configurations, VDisks may be split up into logical volumes by the VIO server and mapped to the VIO clients. For dual VIO server configurations, VDisks may not be split into logical volumes, and must instead be mapped intact through both servers to the VIO clients.

The following IBM Web site provides the most current information about multipath requirements and restrictions for the supported VIO configurations:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Known issues and limitations

I

There are known issues and limitations with the SAN Volume Controller and an IBM System p AIX host.

The AIX host imposes the following size limitations on disk volume sizes:

- 1 TB On 32-bit AIX platforms (4.3.3, 5.1, 5.2, or 5.3)
- 2 TB On 64-bit AIX 5.1 platforms (1 TB for anything reliant on bootinfo)
- 2 **ZB** On 64-bit AIX 5.2 platforms (2 TB when using LVM bad block relocation)

The following IBM support Web site provides for the most current information about known restrictions:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

On a heavily loaded system, you might see the following symptoms, which can indicate that the host is low on direct memory access (DMA) resources:

- You might see errors that indicate that the host bus adapter (HBA) was unable to activate an I/O request on the first attempt.
- You might see lower-than-expected performance with no errors being logged.

To reduce the incidence of these messages, you can increase the resources by modifying the maximum transfer size attribute for the adapter as follows:

1. Type the following command to view the current setting:

```
lsattr -El HBA -a max_xfer_size
```

where *HBA* is the name of the adapter logging the error. For this example, the HBA is fcs0.

2. Type the following command to increase the size of the setting:

```
chdev -1 fcs0 -P -a max xfer size=0x1000000
```

Note: To view the range of allowable values for the attribute, type: lsattr -Rl fcs0 -a max_xfer_size

3. Restart the host to put these changes into effect.

Sample AIX error log

This information provides an example of an AIX error log.

The errors that are shown in the following sample error log indicate that the HBA was unable to open an I/O request on the first attempt because the DMA resources were too low.

```
LABEL: FCS ERR6
IDENTIFIER: D0EAC662
Date/Time:
              Wed Dec 4 16:41:48 MST
Sequence Number: 1949119
Machine Id: 0021DF9A4C00
Node Id:
               lode1
Class:
Type:
               TEMP
Resource Name: fcs0
Resource Class: adapter
Resource Type: df1000f9
Location:
                3V-08
VPD:
```

```
EC Level.....D
Serial Number...........1809102EC
Manufacturer.....0018
FRU Number......09P0102
Network Address......10000000C92BB50F
ROS Level and ID......02C03891
Device Specific.(Z0)......1002606D
Device Specific.(Z1)......00000000
Device Specific.(Z2)......00000000
Device Specific.(Z3).....02000909
Device Specific.(Z4).....FF401050
Device Specific.(Z5)......02C03891
Device Specific.(Z6)......06433891
Device Specific.(Z7)......07433891
Device Specific.(Z8).....20000000C92BB50F
Device Specific.(Z9)......CS3.82A1
Device Specific.(ZA)......C1D3.82A1
Device Specific.(ZB)......C2D3.82A1
```

Description
MICROCODE PROGRAM ERROR

Probable Causes ADAPTER MICROCODE

Failure Causes ADAPTER MICROCODE

Recommended Actions
IF PROBLEM PERSISTS THEN DO THE FOLLOWING
CONTACT APPROPRIATE SERVICE REPRESENTATIVE

Chapter 5. Attaching to IBM pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system

This information provides an overview for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to supported $POWER^{TM}$ technology-based hosts running the Linux operating system.

The following POWER technology-based hosts are supported by the SAN Volume Controller:

- IBM eServer pSeries
- IBM eServer BladeCenter JS20
- IBM System p5

Attachment requirements for pSeries and JS20 hosts

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a pSeries or JS20 host running the Linux operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your host system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and are running a supported kernel of Linux.
- When you attach the SAN Volume Controller to a BladeCenter platform, refer to the BladeCenter documentation for SAN configuration details.

Supported Linux distributions for pSeries and JS20 hosts

Ensure that each pSeries or IS20 host uses a supported Linux distributions.

Table 10 provides information about the distributions that are supported by pSeries and JS20 hosts running Linux.

Table 10. Supported Linux distributions for pSeries and JS20 hosts

Host server	Linux distribution		
pSeries server	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS		
IC20 blada	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server		
JS20 blade server			

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported software levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system

Ensure that your pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system use the correct Linux host bus adapters (HBAs) and host software.

Table 11 lists the supported HBAs for pSeries and JS20 Linux hosts.

Table 11. Supported HBAs for pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system

Host	Operating system	Supported HBAs
pSeries server	SUSE	Emulex adapters
IC20 blade company	Red Hat	QLogic
JS20 blade server	SUSE	QLogic

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running the Linux operating system

The first step for attaching a host that runs the Linux operating system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs if you want to verify that an HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals using the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing a QLogic HBA driver

If your Linux on pSeries or JS20 host contains a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate QLogic driver for the adapter.

1. Download the appropriate QLogic driver and associated files using the following steps:

- a. Use the supported hardware list on the following Web page to find the specific operating system and the QLogic HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the QLogic driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
- b. Ensure that your QLogic HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
- c. Click the link in the HBA Driver column.
- d. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
- e. Decompress the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the QLogic HBA driver using the instructions in the downloaded file.
- 3. Restart the host.

Installing an Emulex HBA driver

If your Linux on pSeries host contains an Emulex host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate QLogic driver for the adapter.

- 1. Download the appropriate Emulex driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the specific operating system and then the Emulex HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the Emulex driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
 - b. Ensure that your Emulex HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - c. Click the link in the HBA Driver column.
 - d. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
 - e. Decompress the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the Emulex HBA driver using the instructions in the downloaded file.
- 3. Restart the host.

Configuring the Linux operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Linux operating system with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your host system:

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* for additional information about zoning.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks). Refer to the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide* for installation instructions.
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host, as required. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* or *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Command-Line Interface User's Guide* for additional information about creating hosts and mapping.
- 4. Either create volumes or disks on your host using a logical volume manager (LVM) or partition and create file systems on the disks. Refer to your host system publications or see the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide* for more information.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system" on page 108

You can locate the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system with a QLogic adapter by following the steps in this topic.

Multipath support for pSeries and JS20 hosts

You must install multipathing software on all pSeries and JS20 hosts that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On pSeries and JS20 hosts that run the Linux operating system, the following software provides multipathing support:

• Subsystem device driver (SDD)

SDD dynamic pathing on hosts running the Linux operating system

Hosts that run the Linux operating system do not support subsystem device driver (SDD) dynamic pathing. If you use a QLogic device driver, you must reload the device driver to pick up the new paths.

On the Linux operating system, SDD is aware of the preferred paths that are set by SAN Volume Controller for each VDisk. When failing over paths, SDD tries the first preferred path, then the next known preferred path, and so on until it has tried all preferred paths. If SDD cannot find an available path using the preferred paths, it begins trying non-preferred paths. If all paths are unavailable, the VDisk goes offline.

SDD on the Linux operating system does not perform load balancing across the preferred paths.

Multipathing configuration maximums for pSeries and JS20 hosts

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for the subsystem device driver (SDD) on pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system.

Table 12 on page 35 provides the maximum virtual disks (VDisks) and paths per VDisk for SDD on hosts running the Linux operating system.

Object	Maximum	Description
VDisks	256	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by Linux (per host object).
Paths per VDisk	4	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk.

Clustering support on hosts running the Linux operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide clustering support on hosts that run the Linux operating system.

SAN boot support on pSeries and JS20 hosts

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide SAN boot support for pSeries and JS20 hosts that run the Linux operating system.

Defining the number of disks for pSeries and JS20 hosts

When you define the number of disks on pSeries and JS20 hosts running the Linux operating system, you are allocating space for configured disks. On the Linux operating system, disks are represented as device files.

There are 256 minor numbers that are available for each of the eight major numbers that can be used to define Linux device files.

Use the following formula to define the maximum number of device files for the host system:

(Number of major numbers) x (Number of minor numbers) / (Number of partitions) = Number of devices

For example, $8 \times 256 / 16 = 128$.

I

Setting queue depth with QLogic HBAs

Configure your host running the Linux operating system to allow a maximum queue depth of four. The queue depth is the number of I/O operations that can be run in parallel on a device.

Perform the following steps to set the maximum queue depth:

1. Add the following line to the /etc/modules.conf file:

For the 2.4 kernel (SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3):

options qla2300 ql2xmaxqdepth=new queue depth

For the 2.6 kernel (SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4):

options qla2xxx ql2xmaxqdepth=new_queue_depth

2. Rebuild the RAM disk that is associated with the kernel being used by using one of the following commands:

- If you are running on an SUSE Linux Enterprise Server operating system, run the mk initrd command.
- If you are running on a Red Hat operating system, run the mkinitrd command and then restart.

Related concepts

"SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system" on page 51

Each of the attached SAN Volume Controller LUNs has a special device file in the Linux directory /dev.

Setting queue depth for Emulex HBAs

Configure your host running the Linux operating system to allow a maximum queue depth of four.

Perform the following steps to set the maximum queue depth:

- Add the following line to the /etc/modules.conf file: lpfc lun queue depth=4
- 2. Restart the machine.

SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for pSeries and JS20 hosts

Each attached SAN Volume Controller LUN has a special device file in the Linux directory /dev.

There is a maximum of 128 fibre-channel disks that are based on the major numbers that are available. The entries for all 128 devices are added by the operating system automatically.

The range of devices are detailed below:

Device range without a subsystem device driver (SDD)

/dev/sda (LUN 0) to /dev/sddx (LUN 127)

Device range with an SDD

/dev/vpatha, vpathb...vpathp (LUN 0) to /dev/vpathaa, vpathab... vpathzp (LUN 127)

Figure 11 and Figure 12 show examples of the range for the devices.

```
# ls -l /dev/sda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 0 Aug 24 2005 /dev/sda
```

Figure 11. Example of range of devices for a host running the Linux operating system when not using the SDD

```
# ls -1 /dev/vpatha
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 0 Aug 24 2005 /dev/vpatha
```

Figure 12. Example of range of devices for a host running the Linux operating system when using the SDD

Partitioning the SAN Volume Controller disk

Use this information when you set up SAN Volume Controller disk partitions.

Before you create a file system, partition the disk by using the fdisk utility. You have to specify the special device file of the disk you want to partition when you run fdisk. Figure 13 shows an example of the different options for the fdisk utility.

Note: If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD), your path in the example is /dev/vpathb instead of /dev/sdb.

```
# fdisk /dev/sdb
Command (m for help): m
Command action
     toggle a bootable flag
b
     edit bsd disklabel
     toggle the dos compatibility flag
d
     delete a partition
     list known partition types
     print this menu
m
n
     add a new partition
     create a new empty DOS partition table
0
р
     print the partition table
     quit without saving changes
q
     create a new empty Sun disklabel
t
      change a partitions system id
     change display/entry units
u
      verify the partition table
      write table to disk and exit
W
      extra functionality (experts only)
```

Figure 13. Example of different options for the fdisk utility

Figure 14 shows an example of a primary partition on the disk /dev/sdb.

Note: If you are using the SDD, your path in the example is /dev/vpathb instead of /dev/sdb.

```
Command (m for help): n

Command action
e extended
p primary partition (1-4)
p
Partition number (1-4): 1
First cylinder (1-953, default 1): Enter
Using default value 1
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (1-953, default 953): Enter
Using default value 953

Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/sdb: 64 heads, 32 sectors, 953 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 2048 * 512 bytes

Device Boot Start End Blocks Id System
/dev/sdb1 1 953 975856 83 Linux
```

Figure 14. Example of a primary partition on the disk /dev/sdb

Assigning the system ID to the partition

Use this information when you assign a system ID to the partition.

Perform the following steps to assign the system ID to the SAN Volume Controller partition on the host running the Linux operating system:

1. Assign the system partition ID.

- 2. Write the information to the partition table on the disk.
- 3. Exit the fdisk program.

Figure 15 shows the assignment of the Linux system ID to the partition (hex code 83).

```
Command (m for help): t
Partition number (1-4): 1

Hex code (type L to list codes): 83

Command (m for help): w
The partition table has been altered!

Calling ioctl() to re-read partition table.

SCSI device sdb: hdwr sector= 512 bytes. Sectors= 1953152 [953 MB] [1.0 GB]

sdb: sdb1

SCSI device sdb: hdwr sector= 512 bytes. Sectors= 1953152 [953 MB] [1.0 GB]

sdb: sdb1

WARNING: If you have created or modified any DOS 6.x partitions, please see the fdisk manual page for additional information.

Syncing disks.

[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 15. Example of assigning a Linux system ID to the partition

Creating file systems on the SAN Volume Controller

Use this information when you are ready to create and use file systems on the SAN Volume Controller.

After you partition the disk, the next step is to create a file system. Figure 16 shows an example of how to use the **mke2fs** command to create an EXT2 Linux file system (which is nonjournaled).

```
[root@yahoo /data]# mke2fs /dev/vpathb1
mke2fs 1.18, 11-Nov-1999 for EXT2 FS 0.5b, 95/08/09
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=4096 (log=2)
Fragment size=4096 (log=2)
122112 inodes, 243964 blocks
12198 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=0
8 block groups
32768 blocks per group, 32768 fragments per group
15264 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
32768, 98304, 163840, 229376
Writing inode tables: done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done
[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 16. Example of creating a file with the mke2fs command

Figure 17 on page 39 shows an example of how to create the EXT2 Linux file system (which is nonjournaled) by using the **mkfs** command.

```
[root@yahoo /data]# mkfs -t ext2 /dev/vpathb1
mke2fs 1.18, 11-Nov-1999 for EXT2 FS 0.5b, 95/08/09
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=4096 (log=2)
Fragment size=4096 (log=2)
122112 inodes, 243964 blocks
12198 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=0
8 block groups
32768 blocks per group, 32768 fragments per group
15264 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
32768, 98304, 163840, 229376
Writing inode tables: done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done
[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 17. Example of creating a file with the mkfs command

Chapter 6. Attaching to IBM System z9 or eServer zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system

This information provides an overview for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to supported IBM System $z9^{\text{\tiny TM}}$ and IBM eServer zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system.

Attachment requirements for System z9 and zSeries hosts running Linux operating systems

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a System z9 or zSeries host running the Linux operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your System z9 or zSeries host system running the Linux operating system:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your host system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and are running a supported Linux kernel.

Supported Linux distributions for System z9 and zSeries hosts

Ensure that each System z9 and zSeries host uses a supported Linux distribution.

Table 13 provides information about the supported distributions.

Table 13. Supported Linux distributions for System z9 and zSeries hosts

Host server	Linux distribution	
zSeries server	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server	
System z9 server	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server	

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported software levels, including distribution levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for System z9 and zSeries hosts running Linux operating systems

Ensure that your System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system use the correct Linux host bus adapters (HBAs) and host software.

Table 14 on page 42 lists the supported HBAs for System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system.

Table 14. Supported HBAs for System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system

Host	Operating system	Supported HBAs (Note 1)
		FICON®
zSeries server	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server	FICON Express
	oci vei	FICON Express2
		FICON
System z9	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server	FICON Express
	oci vei	FICON Express2

Note:

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for System z9 and zSeries hosts

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing and configuring the HBA on System z9 and zSeries hosts

The host bus adapters (HBAs) for a System z9 or zSeries host must be ordered as features and they are either factory-installed when you order a new system or installed into an existing system by an IBM service representative.

Perform the following steps to check the installation of the HBA and to configure the HBA to work with the SAN Volume Controller:

- 1. Ensure that FICON, FICON Express, or FICON Express2 features are installed on your System z9 or zSeries system.
- 2. Configure the HBA to run in FCP mode.

See the following IBM Web site for additional information about FCP connectivity:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity/

Configuring the Linux operating system for System z9 and zSeries hosts

You must configure the Linux operating system before you can use System z9 and zSeries hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

^{1.} The System z9 and zSeries HBAs must be ordered as an additional feature for a host system. They are either factory-installed on the host system or installed in an existing system by an IBM service representative.

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system:

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* for additional information about zoning.
- 2. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host, as required. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* or *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Command-Line Interface User's Guide* for additional information about creating hosts and mapping.
- 3. Configure your Linux system for FCP attachment. Refer to the *Linux on zSeries Device Drivers and Installation Commands for the Linux Kernel 2.4 June 2003 stream* publication (dated March 23, 2005) and *Device Drivers, Features and Commands for the Linux Kernel 2.6 April 2004 stream* publication (dated December 22, 2005) for additional information.
- 4. Either create volumes or disks on your host using the logical volume manager (LVM1) and create file systems on the disks. Refer to your host system publications.

Multipath support for System z9 and zSeries hosts

You must install multipathing software on all System z9 and zSeries hosts that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system, the following software provides multipathing support:

Linux Kernel 2.4

I

1

The logical volume manager.

Linux Kernel 2.6

The mp-tools package.

See the documentation at the following Web site for more information about using the logical volume manager or the multipathing tools package with System z9 and zSeries hosts that run Linux kernel 2.4 or Linux kernel 2.6:

http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/

Multipathing configuration maximums for LVM and mp-tools

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for the logical volume manager (specifically, LVM1) for the Linux operating system.

Logical volume manager

Table 15 on page 44 provides the maximum number of physical volumes, logical volumes, and paths for LVM1.

Object	Maximum	Description
Number of volume groups	99	The number of volume groups that can be defined per host
Physical volumes per volume group	256	The maximum number of physical volumes that can be assigned to one volume group
Paths per physical volume	16	The maximum number of paths to each PV
Logical volumes	256	The total number of logical volumes supported by LVM1 (because of the 256 minor number limit of the kernel)

Multipath-tools

There is virtually no limit on the number of volume groups or paths per volume group with Kernel 2.6.

Clustering support on hosts running the Linux operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide clustering support on hosts that run the Linux operating system.

SAN boot support on System z9 and zSeries hosts

On a SCSI LUN, you can perform an initial program load (IPL) process, but be aware that the boot can fail.

IPL processes on SCSI LUNs can fail because there is no multipath support during the boot process. Refer to the IBM Redbook entitled *Linux on zSeries: Fibre Channel Protocol Implementation Guide* for more information about using IPL processes with System z9 and zSeries hosts.

Defining the number of disks on System z9 and zSeries hosts

When you define the number of disks on System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system, you are allocating space for configured disks.

On the Linux operating system, disks are represented as device files. The maximum number of devices depends on your Linux configuration.

SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for System z9 and zSeries hosts

Each attached SAN Volume Controller LUN has a special device file in the Linux directory /dev.

The maximum number of devices depends on your Linux configuration. Refer to the *Linux on zSeries Device Drivers and Installation Commands for the Linux Kernel 2.4* - *June 2003 stream* publication (dated March 23, 2005) and *Device Drivers, Features and Commands for the Linux Kernel 2.6 - April 2004 stream* publication (dated December 22, 2005) for additional information about multipathing support.

Known issues and limitations for System z9 and zSeries hosts

There are some restrictions for System z9 and zSeries hosts running the Linux operating system.

The following Web site provides currently known restrictions for the latest Linux for System z9 and zSeries streams:

http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/

From that Web site, click **June 2003 stream** to find the known restrictions for the Linux kernel 2.4, or click **October 2005 stream** to find known restrictions for the Linux kernel 2.6.

Chapter 7. Attaching to an Intel host running the Linux operating system

This information provides an overview for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an Intel[®] host running the Linux operating system.

Attachment requirements for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an Intel host running the Linux operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your Intel host running the Linux operating system:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your host system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and are running a supported kernel of Linux.
- When attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a BladeCenter platform, refer to the Bladecenter documentation for SAN configuration details.

Supported Linux distributions for Intel hosts

Ensure that each Intel host uses a supported Linux distributions.

The SAN Volume Controller supports Intel-based hosts that run the following Linux distributions:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported software levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

Ensure that your Intel hosts running the Linux operating system use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs) and host software.

The SAN Volume Controller supports Intel (Linux) hosts that use the following types of HBAs:

- QLogic adapters (on Red Hat and SUSE operating systems with IBM xSeries[®] platforms)
- HS20 and HS40 adapters (on RedHat and SUSE operating systems with IBM BladeCenter platforms)

· LS20 Blade

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your Intel (Linux) hosts.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running the Linux operating system

The first step for attaching a host that runs the Linux operating system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs if you want to verify that an HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals using the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing a QLogic HBA driver on a host running the Linux operating system

If you use a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) in your Intel-based host running the Linux operating system, you must download and install the appropriate QLogic driver for the adapter.

- 1. Restart your host system.
- 2. Download the appropriate QLogic driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the specific operating system and then the QLogic HBA that is installed on your host machine.

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

- The specific versions of the QLogic driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
- b. Ensure that your QLogic HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.

- c. Click the link in the **HBA Driver** column.
- d. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
- e. If you downloaded the driver file from a non-Linux host system, transfer the drive file to your host running the Linux operating system.
- f. Decompress the downloaded file.
- 3. If the host uses a 2.4 kernel Linux operating system, install the QLogic HBA driver using the instructions in the downloaded compressed file.
- 4. If the host uses a 2.6 Linux operating system, follow the instructions in the downloaded compressed file, and pass the ql2xfailover=0 parameter when loading the ql2xxx.ko module. This configures the driver to present all paths so the subsystem device driver (SDD) can provide the failover mechanism.
- 5. Restart the host.

Configuring the Linux operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Linux operating system with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your host system:

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* for additional information about zoning.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks). Refer to the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide* for installation instructions.
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host, as required. See the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Configuration Guide* or *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Command-Line Interface User's Guide* for additional information about creating hosts and mapping.
- 4. Either create volumes or disks on your host using a logical volume manager (LVM) or partition and create file systems on the disks. Refer to your host system publications or see the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide* for more information.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system" on page 108

You can locate the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system with a QLogic adapter by following the steps in this topic.

Multipath support for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

You must install multipathing software on all hosts that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On Intel-based hosts that run the Linux operating system, the following software provides multipathing support:

• Subsystem device driver (SDD)

SDD dynamic pathing on hosts running the Linux operating system

Hosts that run the Linux operating system do not support subsystem device driver (SDD) dynamic pathing. If you use a QLogic device driver, you must reload the device driver to pick up the new paths.

On the Linux operating system, SDD is aware of the preferred paths that are set by SAN Volume Controller for each VDisk. When failing over paths, SDD tries the first preferred path, then the next known preferred path, and so on until it has tried all preferred paths. If SDD cannot find an available path using the preferred paths, it begins trying non-preferred paths. If all paths are unavailable, the VDisk goes offline.

SDD on the Linux operating system does not perform load balancing across the preferred paths.

Multipathing configuration maximums for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for the subsystem device driver (SDD) on Intel-based hosts that run the Linux operating system.

Table 16 provides the maximum virtual disks (VDisks) and paths per VDisk for SDD on the Linux operating system.

Table 16. Configuration	maximums for o	n Intel hosts	running the Linux	onerating system
Table 10. Collingulation	πιαλιπιμπο τοι ο	,,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	I UI II III IU U II C LII IUX	UDGI ALII IU SVSLEI II

Object	Maximum	Description
VDisks	512 (for 2.6 kernel operating systems) 256 (for 2.4 kernel operating systems	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the Linux operating system (per host per cluster).
Paths per VDisk	4	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk.

Clustering support on hosts running the Linux operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide clustering support on hosts that run the Linux operating system.

SAN boot support on Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide SAN boot support for Intel hosts that run the Linux operating system.

I

Defining the number of disks on Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

When you define the number of disks on Intel hosts running the Linux operating system, you are allocating space for configured disks. On the Linux operating system, disks are represented as device files.

For 2.4 Linux kernels, there are 256 minor numbers that are available for each of the eight major numbers that can be used to define Linux device files. Use the following formula to define the maximum number of device files for the host system:

(Number of major numbers) x (Number of minor numbers) / (Number of partitions) = Number of devices

For example, if you have 16 partitions on a 2.4 kernel, you would have 128 devices $(8 \times 256 / 16 = 128)$.

For 2.6 Linux kernels, there are significantly more minor device numbers that are available. Because SAN Volume Controller limits you to 512 VDisks per host, you have more device numbers than can be used.

Setting queue depth with QLogic HBAs

Configure your host running the Linux operating system to allow a maximum queue depth of four. The queue depth is the number of I/O operations that can be run in parallel on a device.

Perform the following steps to set the maximum queue depth:

1. Add the following line to the /etc/modules.conf file:

For the 2.4 kernel (SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3):

options qla2300 ql2xmaxqdepth=new_queue_depth

For the 2.6 kernel (SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4):

options qla2xxx ql2xmaxqdepth=new_queue_depth

- 2. Rebuild the RAM disk that is associated with the kernel being used by using one of the following commands:
 - If you are running on an SUSE Linux Enterprise Server operating system, run the mk_initrd command.
 - If you are running on a Red Hat operating system, run the mkinitrd command and then restart.

Related concepts

"SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system"

Each of the attached SAN Volume Controller LUNs has a special device file in the Linux directory /dev.

SAN Volume Controller storage configuration for Intel hosts running the Linux operating system

Each of the attached SAN Volume Controller LUNs has a special device file in the Linux directory /dev.

Hosts that use 2.4 kernel Linux operating systems have a maximum of 128 fibre-channel disks that are based on the major numbers that are available. The entries for all 128 devices are added by the operating system automatically.

Hosts that use 2.6 kernel Linux operating systems can have as many fibre-channel disks as the number allowed by the SAN Volume Controller. The following IBM Web site provides the most current information about maximum configuration for the SAN Volume Controller:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

The range of devices for each type of kernel is detailed below:

Device range without a subsystem device driver (SDD)

/dev/sda to /dev/sddx

Device range with an SDD

- 2.4 kernel operating systems have the following range:
 - /dev/vpatha, vpathb...vpathp
 - /dev/vpathaa, vpathab...vpathap
 - /dev/vpathba, vpathbb...vpathbp...
 - /dev/vpathza, vpathzb...vpathzp
 - /dev/vpathaaa, vpathaab...vpathaap...
- 2.6 kernel operating systems have the following range:
 - /dev/vpatha, vpathb...vpathz
 - /dev/vpathaa, vpathab...vpathaz
 - /dev/vpathba, vpathbb...vpathbz...
 - /dev/vpathza, vpathzb...vpathzz
 - /dev/vpathaaa, vpathaab...vpathaaz...

Figure 18 and Figure 19 show examples of the range for the devices.

```
# ls -l /dev/sda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 0 Aug 24 2005 /dev/sda
```

Figure 18. Example of range of devices for an Intel host running the Linux operating system when not using the SDD

```
# ls -1 /dev/vpatha
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 0 Aug 24 2005 /dev/vpatha
```

Figure 19. Example of range of devices for an Intel host running the Linux operating system when using the SDD

Partitioning the SAN Volume Controller disk

Use this information when you set up SAN Volume Controller disk partitions.

Before you create a file system, partition the disk by using the fdisk utility. You have to specify the special device file of the disk you want to partition when you run fdisk. Figure 20 on page 53 shows an example of the different options for the fdisk utility.

Note: If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD), your path in the example is /dev/vpathb instead of /dev/sdb.

```
# fdisk /dev/sdb
Command (m for help): m
Command action
    toggle a bootable flag
     edit bsd disklabel
    toggle the dos compatibility flag
d
     delete a partition
     list known partition types
    print this menu
m
n
     add a new partition
     create a new empty DOS partition table
0
     print the partition table
р
    quit without saving changes
     create a new empty Sun disklabel
S
t
     change a partitions system id
     change display/entry units
     verify the partition table
     write table to disk and exit
     extra functionality (experts only)
```

Figure 20. Example of different options for the fdisk utility

Figure 21 shows an example of a primary partition on the disk /dev/sdb.

Note: If you are using the SDD, your path in the example is /dev/vpathb instead of /dev/sdb.

```
Command (m for help): n

Command action
e extended
p primary partition (1-4)
p
Partition number (1-4): 1
First cylinder (1-953, default 1): Enter
Using default value 1
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (1-953, default 953): Enter
Using default value 953

Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/sdb: 64 heads, 32 sectors, 953 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 2048 * 512 bytes

Device Boot Start End Blocks Id System
/dev/sdb1 1 953 975856 83 Linux
```

Figure 21. Example of a primary partition on the disk /dev/sdb

Assigning the system ID to the partition

Use this information when you assign a system ID to the partition.

Perform the following steps to assign the system ID to the SAN Volume Controller partition on the host running the Linux operating system:

- 1. Assign the system partition ID.
- 2. Write the information to the partition table on the disk.
- 3. Exit the fdisk program.

Figure 22 shows the assignment of the Linux system ID to the partition (hex code 83).

```
Command (m for help): t
Partition number (1-4): 1

Hex code (type L to list codes): 83

Command (m for help): w
The partition table has been altered!

Calling ioctl() to re-read partition table.

SCSI device sdb: hdwr sector= 512 bytes. Sectors= 1953152 [953 MB] [1.0 GB]

sdb: sdb1

SCSI device sdb: hdwr sector= 512 bytes. Sectors= 1953152 [953 MB] [1.0 GB]

sdb: sdb1

WARNING: If you have created or modified any DOS 6.x partitions, please see the fdisk manual page for additional information.

Syncing disks.

[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 22. Example of assigning a Linux system ID to the partition

Creating file systems on the SAN Volume Controller

Use this information when you are ready to create and use file systems on the SAN Volume Controller.

After you partition the disk, the next step is to create a file system. Figure 23 shows an example of how to use the **mke2fs** command to create an EXT2 Linux file system (which is nonjournaled).

```
[root@yahoo /data]# mke2fs /dev/vpathb1
mke2fs 1.18, 11-Nov-1999 for EXT2 FS 0.5b, 95/08/09
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=4096 (log=2)
Fragment size=4096 (log=2)
122112 inodes, 243964 blocks
12198 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=0
8 block groups
32768 blocks per group, 32768 fragments per group
15264 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
32768, 98304, 163840, 229376
Writing inode tables: done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done
[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 23. Example of creating a file with the mke2fs command

Figure 24 on page 55 shows an example of how to create the EXT2 Linux file system (which is nonjournaled) by using the **mkfs** command.

```
[root@yahoo /data]# mkfs -t ext2 /dev/vpathb1
mke2fs 1.18, 11-Nov-1999 for EXT2 FS 0.5b, 95/08/09
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=4096 (log=2)
Fragment size=4096 (log=2)
122112 inodes, 243964 blocks
12198 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=0
8 block groups
32768 blocks per group, 32768 fragments per group
15264 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
32768, 98304, 163840, 229376
Writing inode tables: done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done
[root@yahoo /data]#
```

Figure 24. Example of creating a file with the mkfs command

Known issues and limitations

There are known issues and limitations of attaching the SAN Volume Controller to an Intel host running the Linux operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides the most current information about known restrictions:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

LUN set offline

On Intel-based hosts running the Linux operating system, in response to errors, the kernel might permanently disable a LUN and log a message that states both **device set offline** and the specific device.

The kernel typically sets a LUN offline to avoid a possible miscompare mechanism. The message is logged in the syslog, which is usually found in the /var/log/messages directory.

If you receive this message, try one of the following actions:

- · Remove the module.
- · Restart the host.

If you decide to remove the module or need additional details for setting the LUN online, see the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver: User's Guide*.

Maximum file system size limits VDisk size

For certain Linux kernels, the maximum file system is less than the LUN maximum size supported by the SAN Volume Controller.

For 2.4 Linux kernels, the maximum file system size is 512 bytes less than 1 terabyte (TB). For these kernels, this means that your virtual disks are limited to 1 099 511 627 264 bytes of capacity.

Chapter 8. Attaching to a host running the Microsoft Windows 2000 or 2003 32-bit operating system

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the 32-bit Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system. If you are using the Microsoft Windows 2003 64-bit operating system, see the topic for the 64-bit operating system.

Attachment requirements for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your host running a Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system. Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to handle the total LUNs that you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your Windows operating system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide.* All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating system levels on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and configuration utility documents for any additional patches that you might need.

Supported environments for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

Ensure that each host uses a supported operating system and version.

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts that run the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems listed in Table 17.

Table 17. Supported Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

Operating systems	Level
	Windows 2000 Server, DataCenter Edition
Windows 2000 (32-bit only)	Windows 2000 Server
	Windows 2000 Advanced Server
Windows 2003 (32-bit only)	Windows 2003 Server, Standard Edition
	Windows 2003 Server, Enterprise Edition
	Windows 2003 Server, DataCenter Edition

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported host operating systems:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

1

Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

Ensure that your hosts running the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts running the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems that use the following types of HBAs:

- HBAs supported by IBM System Storage DS4000 (on IBM xSeries platforms)
- QLogic (on IBM xSeries and IBM BladeCenter platforms) HBAs
- Emulex (on IBM xSeries platforms) HBAs

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your hosts that run the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system

The first step for attaching a host running the Windows 2000 or 2003 system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs if you want to verify that an HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing the HBA driver for hosts running the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) into the host machine, you must download and install the appropriate HBA driver.

Follow manufacturer's instructions to upgrade the BIOS levels for each type of HBA.

Installing DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA drivers

You must download and install the appropriate device driver for a DS4000-supported HBA or QLogic HBA on your hosts running the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system.

Before you begin this task, you must have installed a DS4000-supported HBA or a QLogic HBA.

Perform the following steps to download and install the correct HBA driver:

- 1. Download the appropriate HBA driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. See the interoperability information at the following IBM Web site for currently supported hardware:
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - b. On the supported hardware list, find the specific operating system and then find the section for the HBA that is installed on your host machine. The current version of the HBA driver and the associated firmware version are provided on the hardware list.
 - c. Ensure that your HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - d. Click the link in the HBA Driver column.
 - e. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
 - f. If you downloaded the driver file to a system other than your Windows host system, transfer the drive file to the host system.
 - g. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the HBA device driver using the instructions contained in the downloaded zip file.
- 3. Restart your host system.

Installing an Emulex HBA driver

If your host running the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system contains an Emulex host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate Emulex driver for the adapter.

- 1. Download the appropriate Emulex driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. See the interoperability information at the following IBM Web site for currently supported hardware and find the specific operating system, then find the Emulex HBA that is installed on your host machine:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

The specific versions of the Emulex driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.

- b. Ensure that your Emulex HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
- c. Click the link in the **HBA Driver** column. Your browser is redirected to the Emulex Web site where you can download the necessary driver files.

- d. On the Emulex Web site, find the section for the appropriate Emulex HBA and driver. Download the zip file for the driver to a local disk.
- e. If you downloaded the driver zip file to a system other than your host system, transfer the drive file to the host system running Windows 2000 or Windows 2003.
- f. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the Emulex HBA driver using the installation instructions available from the Emulex Web site.
- 3. Install the Emulex HBAnyware and any other configuration utilities using the instructions on the Emulex Web site.
- 4. Restart your host system.

Configuring the HBA on a host running the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) and driver on your host, you must configure the HBA.

Configuring the DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

After you have installed a DS4000-supported host bus adapter (HBA) or a QLogic HBA, as well as the device driver, you must configure the HBA.

To configure the HBA for hosts that run the Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 operating systems, perform the following steps:

- 1. Restart the server.
- 2. When you see the QLogic banner, press Ctrl+Q to get to the FAST!UTIL menu panel.
- 3. From the Select Host Adapter menu, select the Adapter Type QLA2xxx.
- 4. From the Fast!UTIL Options menu, select Configuration Settings.
- 5. From the Configuration Settings menu, click Host Adapter Settings.
- 6. From the Host Adapter Settings menu, set the parameters and values as follows:
 - a. Host Adapter BIOS: Disabled
 - b. Frame size: 2048
 - c. Loop Reset Delay: 5 (minimum)
 - d. Adapter Hard Loop ID: Disabled
 - e. Hard Loop ID: 0
 - f. Spinup Delay: **Disabled**
 - g. Connection Options: 1 point to point only
 - h. Fibre Channel Tape Support: Disabled
 - i. Data Rate: 2
- 7. Press Esc to return to the Configuration Settings menu.
- 8. From the Configuration Settings menu, select Advanced Adapter Settings.
- 9. From the Advanced Adapter Settings menu, set the following parameters:
 - a. Execution throttle: 100
 - b. Luns per Target: 0
 - c. Enable LIP Reset: No

f. Login Retry Count: 30

g. Port Down Retry Count: 30

h. Link Down Timeout: 0

i. Extended error logging: Disabled (might be enabled for debugging)

- j. RIO Operation Mode: 0k. Interrupt Delay Timer: 0
- 10. Press Esc to return to the Configuration Settings menu.
- 11. Press Esc.
- 12. From the Configuration settings modified window select Save changes.
- 13. From the Fast!UTIL Options menu, select **Select Host Adapter** and repeat steps 3 on page 60 to 12 if more than one QLogic adapter was installed.
- 14. Restart the server.
- 15. Ensure that the following registry key includes the required parameters:

Key	Required parameters
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE → SYSTEM → CurrentControlSet → Services → ql2xxx → Parameters → Device → DriverParameters	Buschange=0;FixupInquiry=1

16. Restart the system.

Configuring the Emulex HBA for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

After you install the Emulex host bus adapter (HBA) and the driver, you must configure the HBA.

For the Emulex HBA StorPort driver, accept the default settings and set topology to 1 (1=F_Port Fabric). For the Emulex HBA FC Port driver, use the default settings and change the parameters given in Table 18.

Note: The parameters shown in parentheses correspond to the parameters in HBAnywhere.

Table 18. Recommended configuration file parameters for the Emulex HBA

Parameters	Recommended Settings
Query name server for all N-ports (BrokenRSCN)	Enabled
LUN mapping (MapLuns)	Enabled (1)
Automatic LUN mapping (MapLuns)	Enabled (1)
Allow multiple paths to SCSI targets (MultipleSCSIClaims)	Enabled
Scan in device ID order (ScanDeviceIDOrder)	Disabled
Translate queue full to busy (TranslateQueueFull)	Enabled
Retry timer (RetryTimer)	2000 milliseconds

Table 18. Recommended configuration file parameters for the Emulex HBA (continued)

Parameters	Recommended Settings
	Equal to or greater than the number of the SAN Volume Controller LUNs that are available to the HBA

Configuring the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating system

You must configure the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system before you can use the hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapter and driver on your host system.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system.

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Related reference

"Locating the WWPN for a host running the Microsoft Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system" on page 108

Determining the WWPN of a host that runs a Windows operating system depends on the type of HBA in your host server.

Multipath support for host running the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating system

You must install a multipathing software on all attached hosts that run the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system.

For hosts that run the Windows 2000 operating system, you must use either of the following drivers for multipathing support:

- subsystem device driver (SDD)
- VERITAS Volume Manager Dynamic Multipathing Mode 9200

For hosts that run the Windows 2003 operating system, you can use one of the following drivers for multipathing support:

- Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) driver, when used with the IBM subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM).
- VERITAS Volume Manager Dynamic Multipathing Mode 9200

Notes:

- 1. SDDDSM is supported only with the StorPort HBA drivers.
- 2. SDD and VERITAS DMP are supported only with the non-StorPort HBA drivers. These are the FC Port driver on Emulex and the SCSIport driver on QLogic.

When you configure your Windows host, keep in mind the maximum configurations, as provided in Table 19.

Table 19. Configuration maximums for Windows

Object	Maximum	Description
VDisk	512 (See Note 1.)	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the SAN Volume Controller for a host running a Microsoft Windows operating system (per host object).
Paths per VDisk (See Note 2.)	8	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk. The recommended number of paths is 4.

Notes:

- 1. You can assign a maximum of 26 individual drive letters to a host running a Windows operating system. However, both Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 support submounting drives as directories within other drives.
- 2. SDD and SDDDSM for Windows actually support 16 paths per VDisk, but the SAN Volume Controller supports only a maximum of eight paths to ensure a reasonable path-failover time.

SDD dynamic pathing on hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

The subsystem device driver (SDD) for Windows supports dynamic pathing for hosts that run the Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 operating systems.

SDD supports dynamic pathing when you add more paths to an existing VDisk and when you present a new VDisk to the host. No user intervention is required, other than is normal for a new device discovery under the Windows operating system.

Preferred paths are also supported with SDD for Windows. When you use clustering, SDD is aware of the preferred paths that the SAN Volume Controller sets for each VDisk. In this case, SDD uses its reserve policy to reserve a single path to the device and uses a preferred path if one is available. If you do not use clustering, SDD uses a load-balancing policy and tries to equalize the load across all preferred paths. If preferred paths are available, SDD uses the path that has the least I/O at the time. If SDD finds no available preferred paths, it tries to balance the load across all the paths it does find and uses the least active non-preferred path.

Note: The SDD driver can coexist on a host running the Windows 2000 operating system with the IBM DS4000 (FAStT) Redundant Dual Active Controller (RDAC) driver. Coexistence is not supported on hosts that run the Windows 2003 operating system. For supported levels of DS4000 RDAC, see the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site:

MPIO/SDDDSM dynamic pathing

You can use the Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) driver for dynamic pathing when you also use the IBM subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM).

MPIO supports dynamic pathing when you add more paths to an existing VDisk and when you present a new VDisk to the host. No user intervention is required, other than is normal for a new device discovery under a Windows operating system.

Preferred path support is available through SDDDSM. When you use clustering, SDDDSM is aware of the preferred paths that the SAN Volume Controller sets for each VDisk. In this case, SDDDSM uses its reserve policy to reserve a single path to the device and uses a preferred path if one is available. If you do not use clustering, SDDDSM uses a load-balancing policy that tries to equalize the load across all preferred paths. If preferred paths are available, SDDDSM uses the path that has the least I/O at the time. If SDDDSM finds no available preferred paths, it tries to balance the load across all the paths it does find and uses the least active non-preferred path.

Path probing and reclamation is provided by MPIO and SDDDSM. For SDDDSM, the interval is set to 60 seconds. You can change this by modifying the following Windows system registry key: HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\mpio\Parameters\PathVerificationPeriod

Clustering support for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller provides clustering support for hosts that run Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems.

Table 20 provides information about the cluster software supported for hosts that run Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems.

Table 20. Clustering software supported for hosts that run Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

Operating system	perating system Cluster software	
Windows 2000 Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS)		Microsoft
	VERITAS Cluster Server (VCS)	Symantec
	MSCS	Microsoft
Windows 2003	MSCS, with IBM TotalStorage Continuous Availability for Windows	Microsoft and IBM
	VCS	Symantec

Notes:

- When you use MSCS with the IBM TotalStorage Continuous Availability for Windows feature, hosts that run the Windows 2003 operating system can support IBM System Storage Metro Mirror for SAN Volume Controller.
- VERITAS Cluster Server is only supported with VERITAS DMP.
- Microsoft Cluster Server and MSCS with IBM TotalStorage Continuous Availability for Windows are only supported with IBM mupltipathing drivers SDD and SDDDSM.

SAN boot support for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller can be used as a boot device for hosts that run Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems.

You can use an SVC VDisk as a boot device when using one of the following multipathing drivers:

• SDD

1

• SDDDSM/MPIO

Restrictions:

- See the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site to ensure that you download and use the appropriate drivers for the SAN Volume Controller: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- See the software restrictions page on the following IBM support Web site for the most current information about known restrictions for SAN boot support: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Configuring for SAN boot for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

If you want to use the SAN Volume Controller as a boot device for a host running either the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system, you must configure the system correctly.

Use the following steps to configure the system:

- 1. Configure the SAN Volume Controller so that only the boot virtual disk (VDisk) is mapped to the host.
- 2. Configure the fibre-channel SAN so that the host can see only one SAN Volume Controller node port. This means that there is only one path from the host to its boot disk.
- 3. Configure and enable the HBA BIOS.
- 4. Install Windows, using the normal procedure, selecting the VDisk as the partition on which to install.
- 5. After Windows and subsystem device driver (SDD) or the IBM subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM) is installed, zoning should be modified to allow multiple paths.

Restriction: For SDD, there can be no multipathing during the boot sequence, until after SDD is loaded.

6. Set redundant boot devices in the BIOS to allow the host to boot when its original boot path has failed.

Migrating existing SAN boot images

If you have a host that runs a Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Perform the following steps to migrate your existing SAN boot images:

- 1. Shut down the host.
- 2. Perform the following configuration changes on the storage controller:
 - a. Remove all the image-to-host mappings from the storage controller.

- b. Map the existing SAN boot image and any other disks to the SAN Volume Controller.
- 3. Zone one port of each host bus adapter (HBA) to one of the SAN Volume Controller ports that is associated with the I/O group for the target image-mode VDisk.
- 4. Perform the following configuration changes on the SAN Volume Controller:
 - a. Create an image-mode VDisk for the managed disk (MDisk) that contains the SAN boot image. Use the MDisk unique identifier to specify the correct MDisk.
 - b. Create a host object and assign it to the HBA port that you zoned to the SAN Volume Controller port in step 3.
 - **c**. Map the image mode VDisk to the host. For example, you might map the boot disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 0.
 - d. Map the swap disk to the host, if required. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 1.
- 5. Change the boot address of the host by performing the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the BIOS utility of the host during the booting process.
 - b. Set the BIOS settings on the host to find the boot image at the WWPN of the SVC node that is zoned to the HBA port.
- 6. Boot the host in single-path mode.
- 7. Uninstall any multipathing driver that is unsupported for SAN Volume Controller hosts that run the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating system.
- 8. Install a supported multipathing driver.
- 9. Restart the host in single-path mode to ensure that the supported multipath driver was properly installed.
- 10. Zone each HBA port to one port on each SAN Volume Controller node.
- 11. Add additional HBA ports to the host object that you created in step 4b.
- 12. Configure the HBA settings on the host by using the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the host's BIOS utility during the booting process.
 - b. Ensure that all HBA ports are boot-enabled and can see both nodes in the I/O group that contains the SAN boot image. Configure the HBA ports for redundant paths.
 - c. Exit the BIOS utility and finish booting the host.
- 13. Map any further VDisks to host as required.

Known issues and limitations for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

There are known issues and limitations when attaching to a host that runs the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides the most current information about known restrictions for hosts, including hosts that run a Microsoft Windows operating system:

Using the SAN boot feature with Microsoft clusters

Microsoft SAN Boot Clusters (MSCS) have the following Microsoft restrictions:

- On a host running the Windows 2000 operating system, server clusters require that the boot disk be on a different storage bus than the cluster server disks.
- On a host running the Windows 2003 operating system, clustered disks and boot disks can be presented on the same storage bus, but only if the Storport driver is being used.

The following IBM Web site provides additional details about using the SAN boot feature with Microsoft clusters:

Chapter 9. Attaching to a host running the Microsoft Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.

Attachment requirements for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your host running a Windows 2003 64-bit operating system:

- You must install the Microsoft Hotfix KB908980 (available from Microsoft support) on your Windows 64-bit platform before using it with the SAN Volume Controller. If you do not install the fix prior to operation, preferred pathing is not available.
- Check the LUN limitations for your host system. Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to manage the total LUNs that you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your Windows operating system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating system levels on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and configuration utility documents for any additional patches that you might need.

Supported environments for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

Ensure that each host uses a supported operating system and version.

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts that run the Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems listed below:

Operating systems	Level
Windows 2003 (64-bit only)	Windows 2003 Server, Standard Edition
	Windows 2003 Server, Enterprise Edition
	Windows 2003 Server, DataCenter Edition

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported host operating systems:

Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

Ensure that your hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems that use the following HBA types:

- HBAs supported by the IBM System Storage DS4000 (on IBM xSeries platforms)
- QLogic (on IBM xSeries and IBM BladeCenter platforms) HBAs
- Emulex (on IBM xSeries platforms) HBAs

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your hosts that run the Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

The first step for attaching a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported HBAs:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shut down your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing the HBA driver for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) into the host machine, you must download and install the appropriate HBA driver.

Note: Only the StorPort drivers are supported on the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.

1

Follow manufacturer's instructions to upgrade the BIOS levels for each type of ı 64-bit operating system. QLogic HBA. steps: currently supported hardware: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145 provided on the hardware list.

Installing DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA drivers

You must download and install the appropriate device driver for a DS4000-supported HBA or QLogic HBA on your hosts running the Windows 2003

Before you begin this task, you must have installed a DS4000-supported HBA or a

Perform the following steps to download and install the correct HBA driver:

- 1. Download the appropriate HBA driver and associated files using the following
 - a. See the interoperability information at the following IBM Web site for
 - b. On the supported hardware list, find the specific operating system and then find the section for the HBA that is installed on your host machine. The current version of the HBA driver and the associated firmware version are
 - c. Ensure that your HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - d. Click the link in the **HBA Driver** column.
 - e. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
 - f. If you downloaded the driver file to a system other than your Windows host system, transfer the drive file to the host system.
 - g. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the HBA device driver using the instructions contained in the downloaded zip file.
- 3. Restart your host system.

Installing an Emulex HBA driver

If your host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system contains an Emulex host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate Emulex driver for the adapter.

- 1. Download the appropriate Emulex driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. See the interoperability information at the following IBM Web site for currently supported hardware and find the specific operating system, then find the Emulex HBA that is installed on your host machine:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

The specific versions of the Emulex driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.

b. Ensure that your Emulex HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.

- **c**. Click the link in the **HBA Driver** column. Your browser is redirected to the Emulex Web site where you can download the necessary driver files.
- d. On the Emulex Web site, find the section for the appropriate Emulex HBA and driver. Download the zip file for the driver to a local disk.
- e. If you downloaded the driver zip file to a system other than your host system, transfer the drive file to the host system running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.
- f. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the Emulex HBA driver using the installation instructions available from the Emulex Web site.
- 3. Install the Emulex HBAnyware and any other configuration utilities using the instructions on the Emulex Web site.
- 4. Restart your host system.

Configuring the HBA on a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) and driver on your host, you must configure the HBA.

Configuring the DS4000-supported or QLogic HBA for hosts running Windows 2000 and 2003 operating systems

After you have installed a DS4000-supported host bus adapter (HBA) or a QLogic HBA, as well as the device driver, you must configure the HBA.

To configure the HBA for hosts that run the Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 operating systems, perform the following steps:

- 1. Restart the server.
- 2. When you see the QLogic banner, press Ctrl+Q to get to the FAST!UTIL menu panel.
- 3. From the Select Host Adapter menu, select the Adapter Type QLA2xxx.
- 4. From the Fast!UTIL Options menu, select Configuration Settings.
- 5. From the Configuration Settings menu, click **Host Adapter Settings**.
- 6. From the Host Adapter Settings menu, set the parameters and values as follows:
 - a. Host Adapter BIOS: Disabled
 - b. Frame size: 2048
 - c. Loop Reset Delay: 5 (minimum)
 - d. Adapter Hard Loop ID: Disabled
 - e. Hard Loop ID: 0
 - f. Spinup Delay: **Disabled**
 - g. Connection Options: 1 point to point only
 - h. Fibre Channel Tape Support: Disabled
 - i. Data Rate: 2
- 7. Press Esc to return to the Configuration Settings menu.
- 8. From the Configuration Settings menu, select Advanced Adapter Settings.
- 9. From the Advanced Adapter Settings menu, set the following parameters:
 - a. Execution throttle: 100

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE → SYSTEM CurrentControlSet → Services → ql2xxx → Parameters → Device → DriverParameters		
Key	Required parameters	
15. Ensure that the following registr	y key includes the required parameters:	
14. Restart the server.		
steps 3 on page 60 to 12 on page installed.	steps 3 on page 60 to 12 on page 61 if more than one QLogic adapter was	
	nu, select Select Host Adapter and repeat	
	modified window select Save changes.	
11. Press Esc.	diddon Settings menu.	
10. Press Esc to return to the Config	uration Settings menu	
k. Interrupt Delay Timer: 0		
j. RIO Operation Mode: 0	pled (might be enabled for debugging)	
h. Link Down Timeout: 0	alod (might be enabled for debugging)	
g. Port Down Retry Count: 30		
f. Login Retry Count: 30		
e. Enable Target Reset: Yes		
d. Enable LIP Full Login: Yes		
c. Enable LIP Reset: No		
b. Luns per Target: 0		

Configuring the Emulex HBA for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

After you install the Emulex host bus adapter (HBA) and the driver, you must configure the HBA.

For the Emulex HBA StorPort driver, configure the default settings and set topology to 1 (1=F_Port Fabric).

Configuring the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

Ī

You must configure the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system before you can use the hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapter and driver on your host system.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.

1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.

- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Multipath support for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system

For hosts that run the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system, you must use the Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) driver when used with the IBM subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM).

The following IBM Web site provides current information about supported device drivers:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

MPIO/SDDDSM dynamic pathing

You can use the Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) driver for dynamic pathing when you also use the IBM subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM).

MPIO supports dynamic pathing when you add more paths to an existing VDisk and when you present a new VDisk to the host. No user intervention is required, other than is normal for a new device discovery under a Windows operating system.

Preferred path support is available through SDDDSM. When you use clustering, SDDDSM is aware of the preferred paths that the SAN Volume Controller sets for each VDisk. In this case, SDDDSM uses its reserve policy to reserve a single path to the device and uses a preferred path if one is available. If you do not use clustering, SDDDSM uses a load-balancing policy that tries to equalize the load across all preferred paths. If preferred paths are available, SDDDSM uses the path that has the least I/O at the time. If SDDDSM finds no available preferred paths, it tries to balance the load across all the paths it does find and uses the least active non-preferred path.

Path probing and reclamation is provided by MPIO/SDDDSM. For SDDDSM, the interval is set to 60 seconds. You can change this by modifying the following Windows system registry key: HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\mpio\Parameters\PathVerificationPeriod

When you configure, keep in mind the MPIO/SDDDSM for Windows maximum configuration, which is provided in Table 21.

Table 21. Configuration maximums for MPIO/SDDDSM for Windows

Object	MPIO/SDDDSM maximum	Description
VDisk	256	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the SAN Volume Controller for a host running a Microsoft Windows operating system (per host object).

Table 21. Configuration maximums for MPIO/SDDDSM for Windows (continued)

Object	MPIO/SDDDSM maximum	Description
Paths per VDisk (See Note 2.)	I .	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk. The recommended number of paths is 4.

Clustering support for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

Currently, the SAN Volume controller does not support clustering on Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems.

Refer to the IBM Web site for the latest information:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

ı

ı

1

I

SAN boot support for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller can be used as a boot device for hosts that run Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems.

For SAN boot support for hosts running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system, all Windows configurations are allowed.

Configuring for SAN boot for hosts running Windows 2003 64-bit operating systems

If you want to use the SAN Volume Controller as a boot device for a host running the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system, you must configure the system correctly.

Use the following steps to configure the system:

- 1. Configure the SAN Volume Controller so that only the boot virtual disk (VDisk) is mapped to the host.
- 2. Configure the fibre-channel SAN so that the host can see only one SAN Volume Controller node port. This means that there is only one path from the host to its boot disk.
- 3. Configure and enable the HBA BIOS.
- 4. Install Windows, using the normal procedure, selecting the VDisk as the partition on which to install.
- 5. After Windows and a supported multipathing driver are installed, zoning should be modified to allow multiple paths.
- 6. Set redundant boot devices in the BIOS to allow the host to boot when its original boot path has failed.

Migrating existing SAN boot images

If you have a host that runs a Windows 2003 64-bit operating system and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Perform the following steps to migrate your existing SAN boot images:

- 1. Shut down the host.
- 2. Perform the following configuration changes on the storage controller:
 - a. Remove all the image-to-host mappings from the storage controller.
 - b. Map the existing SAN boot image and any other disks to the SAN Volume Controller.
- 3. Zone one port of each host bus adapter (HBA) to one of the SAN Volume Controller ports that is associated with the I/O group for the target image-mode VDisk.
- 4. Perform the following configuration changes on the SAN Volume Controller:
 - a. Create an image-mode VDisk for the managed disk (MDisk) that contains the SAN boot image. Use the MDisk unique identifier to specify the correct MDisk.
 - b. Create a host object and assign it to the HBA port that you zoned to the SAN Volume Controller port in step 3.
 - **c**. Map the image mode VDisk to the host. For example, you might map the boot disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 0.
 - d. Map the swap disk to the host, if required. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 1.
- 5. Change the boot address of the host by performing the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the BIOS utility of the host during the booting process.
 - b. Set the BIOS settings on the host to find the boot image at the WWPN of the SAN Volume Controller node that is zoned to the HBA port.
- 6. Boot the host in single-path mode.
- 7. Uninstall any multipathing driver that is not supported for SAN Volume Controller hosts that run the Windows 2003 64-bit operating system.
- 8. Install a supported multipathing driver.
- 9. Restart the host in single-path mode to ensure that the multipathing driver was properly installed.
- 10. Zone each HBA port to one port on each SAN Volume Controller node.
- 11. Add additional HBA ports to the host object that you created in step 4b.
- 12. Configure the HBA settings on the host by using the following steps:
 - a. Restart the host and open the host's BIOS utility during the booting process.
 - b. Change the settings for both HBAs so that they are boot-enabled and can see both nodes in the I/O group that contains the SAN boot image.
 - c. Exit the BIOS utility and finish booting the host.
- 13. Map any further VDisks to host as required.

Chapter 10. Attaching to a host running the Microsoft Windows NT operating system

These are requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Windows NT operating system.

Attachment requirements for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Windows NT operating system.

The following list provides the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your host running the Windows NT operating system:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system. Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to handle the total LUNs that you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your Windows NT operating system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating system levels on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and configuration utility documents for any additional patches that you might need.

Supported environments for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

Ensure that each host uses a supported operating system and version.

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts that run the Windows NT operating systems listed on Table 22.

Table 22. Supported operating systems for hosts that run the Windows NT operating system

Operating systems	Level
Windows NT	Windows NT4 Server

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported host operating systems:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

Ensure that your hosts use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts running the Windows NT operating system that use the following type of HBAs:

• DS4000 series on IBM xSeries platforms

• QLogic (on IBM xSeries platforms)

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your hosts that run the Windows NT operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running the Windows NT operating system

The first step for attaching a host that runs the Windows NT operating system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. See the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site if you need to verify that the HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing a DS4000-series or QLogic HBA driver

If you use the DS4000-series or QLogic HBA on a host that runs the Windows NT operating system, you must download and install the appropriate device driver.

Before you begin this task, you must have installed the DS4000-series HBA or QLogic HBA.

Perform the following steps to download and install the correct HBA driver:

- 1. Download the appropriate HBA driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. See the interoperability information at the following IBM Web site for currently supported hardware:
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - b. On the supported hardware list, find the specific operating system and then find the section for the HBA that is installed on your host machine. The current version of the HBA driver and the associated firmware version are provided on the hardware list.

- c. Ensure that your HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
- d. Click the link in the HBA Driver column.
- e. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
- f. If you downloaded the driver file to a system other than your host system, transfer the drive file to your host system that is running the Windows NT operating system.
- g. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2. Install the HBA device driver using the instructions contained in the downloaded zip file.
- 3. Restart your host system.

Configuring the DS4000-series or QLogic HBA for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

After you have installed the DS4000-series or QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) and the device driver, you must configure the HBA.

To configure the DS4000-series or QLogic HBA for a host that runs the Windows NT operating system, use the following steps:

1. Restart the server.

1

- 2. When you see the QLogic banner, press Ctrl+Q to get to the FAST!UTIL menu panel.
- 3. From the Select Host Adapter menu, select the Adapter Type QLA23xx.
- 4. From the Fast!UTIL Options menu, select Configuration Settings.
- 5. From the Configuration Settings menu, click **Host Adapter Settings**.
- From the Host Adapter Settings menu, set the parameters and values as follows:
 - a. Host Adapter BIOS: Disabled
 - b. Frame size: 2048
 - c. Loop Reset Delay: 5 (minimum)
 - d. Adapter Hard Loop ID: Disabled
 - e. Hard Loop ID: 0
 - f. Spinup Delay: Disabled
 - g. Connection Options: 1 point to point only
 - h. Fibre Channel Tape Support: Disabled
 - i. Data Rate: 2
- 7. Press Esc to return to the Configuration Settings menu.
- 8. From the Configuration Settings menu, select Advanced Adapter Settings.
- 9. From the Advanced Adapter Settings menu, set the following parameters:
 - a. Execution throttle: 100
 - b. Luns per Target: 0
 - c. Enable LIP Reset: No
 - d. Enable LIP Full Login: Yes
 - e. Enable Target Reset: Yes
 - f. Login Retry Count: 30

- g. Port Down Retry Count: 30
- h. Link Down Timeout: 0
- i. Extended error logging: Disabled (might be enabled for debugging)
- j. RIO Operation Mode: 0
- k. Interrupt Delay Timer: 0
- 10. Press Esc to return to the Configuration Settings menu.
- 11. Press Esc.
- 12. From the Configuration settings modified window select Save changes.
- 13. From the Fast!UTIL Options menu, select **Select Host Adapter** and repeat steps 3 on page 79 to 12, if more than one QLogic adapter has been installed.
- 14. Restart the server.
- 15. Ensure that the following registry key includes the required parameters.

Key	Required parameters
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE → SYSTEM → CurrentControlSet → Services → ql2xxx → Parameters → Device → DriverParameters	Buschange=0;FixupInquiry=1

16. Restart the system.

Configuring the Windows NT operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Windows NT operating system.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your Windows NT operating system.

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).
- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a host running the Windows NT operating system" on page 108

You can locate the worldwide port names (WWPNs) for a host running the Windows NT operating system with a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) within the QLogic BIOS.

Multipath support for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

You must install a multipathing software on all hosts running the Windows NT operating system that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

For hosts that run the Windows NT operating system, you must use the following driver for multipathing support:

• Subsystem device driver (SDD)

SDD dynamic pathing on hosts running the Windows NT operating system

The subsystem device driver (SDD) for Windows supports dynamic pathing for hosts that run the Windows NT operating system.

SDD supports dynamic pathing when you add more paths to an existing VDisk and when you present a new VDisk to the host. No user intervention is required, other than is normal for a new device discovery under Windows operating systems.

Preferred paths are also supported with SDD for Windows. When you use clustering, SDD is aware of the preferred paths that the SAN Volume Controller sets for each VDisk. In this case, SDD uses its reserve policy to reserve a single path to the device and uses a preferred path if one is available. If you do not use clustering, SDD uses its load-balancing policy that tries to equalize the load across all preferred paths. If preferred paths are available, SDD uses the path that has the least I/O at the time. If SDD finds no available preferred paths, it tries to balance the load across all the paths it does find and uses the least active non-preferred path.

When you configure, keep in mind the SDD for Windows maximum configuration, which is provided in Table 23.

Table 23. Conf	tiguration i	maxımums	tor SDL) tor	Windows
----------------	--------------	----------	---------	-------	---------

Object	SDD maximum	Description
VDisk	512 (See Note 1.)	The maximum number of VDisks that can be supported by the SAN Volume Controller for a host that runs a Microsoft Windows operating system (per host object).
Paths per VDisk (See Note 2.)	8	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk.

Notes®:

- 1. You can assign a maximum of 26 individual drive letters to a host that runs the Windows NT operating system.
- 2. SDD for Windows supports 16 paths per VDisk, but SAN Volume Controller supports only a maximum of eight paths to ensure a reasonable path-failover time.

Clustering support for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide clustering support for hosts that run the Windows NT operating system.

SAN boot support for hosts running the Windows NT operating system

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide SAN boot support for hosts that run the Windows NT operating system.

Configuration for availability and recovery

This information provides a quick explanation of the configuration for availability and recovery.

The host adapter uses the time-out parameter to bind its recovery actions and responses to the disk subsystem. The value exists in different places in the system configuration. You can retrieve and use it in different ways depending on the type of host adapter that is installed.

Setting the TimeOutValue registry

The Windows NT HBA uses the time-out parameter to bind its recovery actions and responses to the disk subsystem.

This information provides the steps required for setting the TimeOutValue registry on a host running the Windows NT operating system.

- 1. From the **Run** menu or command prompt, type: Regedit32.exe
- 2. Navigate to the following registry key: HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Disk
- 3. Look for the value called TimeOutValue. If the value called TimeOutValue does not exist, go to step 3a. If the TimeOutValue exists, go to step 4.
 - a. Click Edit > Add Value...
 - b. For ValueName, type: TimeOutValue.
 - c. For data type, type: REG-DWORD.
 - d. Click OK.
 - e. For Value data, type: 3c.
 - f. For Base, click **Hex**.
 - g. Click **OK**.
- 4. If the value exists and is less than 0x0000003c (60 decimal), perform the following steps to increase it to 0x3c.
 - a. Click TimeOutValue.
 - b. Click **Edit** → **DWORD...**.
 - c. For Value data, type: 3c.
 - d. For Base, click **Hex**.
 - e. Click OK.
- 5. Exit the Regedit32 program.
- 6. Restart your Windows NT server for the changes to take effect.

Chapter 11. Attaching to a host running a Novell NetWare operating system

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running the Novell NetWare operating system.

Attachment requirements for hosts running NetWare operating systems

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host that runs a Novell NetWare operating system.

- Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to handle the total LUNs that you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for the NetWare operating system and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and version levels on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and

on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and configuration utility documents for any additional NetWare patches that you might need.

Supported NetWare environments

Ensure that each host that runs a Novell NetWare operating system uses a supported level of the operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported operating system levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for hosts running NetWare operating systems

Ensure that your hosts that run a Novell NetWare operating system use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts running the NetWare operating system that use the following HBA type:

QLogic (on IBM xSeries platforms)

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running NetWare operating systems

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your hosts that run a Novell NetWare operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing an HBA on a host running NetWare operating systems

The first step for attaching a host that runs the NetWare operating system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that it is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. See the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site if you need to verify that the HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the adapter manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing the HBA driver on hosts running NetWare operating systems

Follow the instructions provided by Novell to install the HBA drivers and firmware. Installing these components should be part of the NetWare installation and setup process.

Configuring the NetWare operating system

You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts that run a Novell NetWare operating system with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your host system.

- 1. Define the host system with the worldwide port name identifiers. You will have to locate the list of worldwide port names.
- 2. Define the fibre-port configuration if it was not done during the installation of the SAN Volume Controller or fibre-channel adapters.
- 3. Configure the host system for the SAN Volume Controller by using the instructions in your NetWare publications.

Multipath support for hosts running NetWare operating systems

You must install a multipathing software on all hosts that run a NetWare operating system and are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On hosts that run a NetWare operating system, the following software provides multipathing support:

• Novell Storage Services (NSS)

Configuring multipath support for hosts running NetWare operating systems

You must configure the Novell Storage Services (NSS) for multipath support.

Perform the following steps to configure NSS for multipathing:

- 1. Find and open the \NWSERVER\STARTUP.NCF file.
- Enable asynchronous event notification by finding the LOAD SCSIHD.CDM line and adding AEN to the end of the line. The following line provides an example for a line that enables asynchronous event notification: LOAD SCSIHD.CDM AEN
- 3. Set multipathing support by adding the following line to the top of the file: SET MULTI-PATH SUPPORT=ON
- 4. Configure the host bus adapters (HBAs) by performing the following steps:
 - a. Locate a line in the file that loads a fibre-channel HBA (for example LOAD QL2300.HAM SLOT=101).
 - b. Add the LUNS, MAXLUNS, ALLPATHS, and PORTNAMES parameters, separated by spaces, to the end of the line. Use the following syntax:

```
LOAD adapter_driver_file SLOT=slot_number /LUNS /MAXLUNS=max_number_luns /ALLPATHS /PORTNAMES
```

where <code>adapter_driver_file</code> is the file name for the HBA driver, <code>slot_number</code> is the number of the slot where the HBA is located, and <code>max_number_luns</code> is the maximum number of logical unit numbers (LUNs) that are allowed during the LUN scan.

An example line is provided below:
LOAD QL2300.HAM SLOT=101 /LUNS /MAXLUNS=64 /ALLPATHS /PORTNAMES

- **c.** Repeat step 4a and step 4b for each line in the file that loads a fibre-channel host bus adapter.
- 5. Find and open the SYS:\SYSTEM\AUTOEXEC.NCF file.
- 6. Insert the following line above the line that reads **MOUNT ALL**: SCAN FOR NEW DEVICES

Clustering support for hosts running NetWare operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller supports clustering for hosts that run NetWare operating systems.

Table 24 provides information about the cluster software supported for hosts that run a NetWare operating system.

Table 24. Clustering software supported for hosts running a NetWare operating system

Operating system	Cluster software	Vendor
NetWare	Novell Cluster Services	Novell

Configuring clustering support for hosts running NetWare operating systems

You must configure the Novell Storage Services (NSS) for clustering support.

Perform the following steps to configure NSS for clustering:

- 1. Find and open the SYS\SYSTEM\LDNCS.NCF file.
- 2. Configure NSS to prevent clustered hosts from entering a failover cascade when a single host fails by using the following steps:
 - a. Find the line containing CLSTRLIB.
 - b. Add the /HMO=OFF parameter (for example, CLSTRLIB /HM0=0FF).
- 3. Configure NSS to prevent hosts from entering the recovery state following cluster or IO errors by ensuring that the SET AUTO RESTART AFTER ABEND line is set to 3. For example, the line must look similar to the following line: SET AUTO RESTART AFTER ABEND=3

A value of 3 causes the host to immediately restart following a cluster or I/O abend. A value less than 3 will cause the host to enter and remain in the recovery state with its network card disabled.

SAN boot support for hosts running NetWare operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller provides SAN boot support for NetWare hosts, booted from a single SAN Volume Controller VDisk.

Create an appropriately-sized installation VDisk and map it to the NetWare host. Follow the manufacturer's installation instructions and proceed with the installation of the NetWare operating system. When you are prompted to select an installation target, select the previously-defined SAN Volume Controller VDisk.

Chapter 12. Attaching to a Sun SPARC host

This information provides an overview for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a Sun SPARC host running a Solaris operating system.

Attachment requirements for Sun SPARC hosts

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to Sun SPARC hosts.

The requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to your Sun host system are as follows:

- Check the LUN limitations for your host system. Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to handle the total LUNs you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for your host system and the *IBM* System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide. All SAN Volume
 Controller publications are available from the following Web site:
 http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating system level and any updates.
- Review device driver installation documents and configuration utility documents for additional patches that you might need.

Supported environments for Sun SPARC hosts

Ensure that each host uses a supported operating system and version.

The SAN Volume Controller supports Sun SPARC hosts that run the following operating systems:

- Solaris 8, SPARC Platform Edition
- Solaris 9, SPARC Platform Edition
- Solaris 10, SPARC Platform Edition

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported software levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for Sun SPARC hosts

Ensure that your Sun SPARC hosts use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports Sun SPARC host HBAs that are listed in Table 25 on page 88.

1

Table 25. HBAs utilized by the SAN Volume Controller Sun SPARC hosts

Operating System	HBAs supported	
Solaris 8, SPARC Platform Edition	JNI	
Solaris 9, SPARC Platform Edition	Emulex	
	QLogic	
Solaris 10, SPARC Platform Edition	Emulex	
	QLogic	
	Sun badged QLogic	

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for Sun SPARC hosts

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for your Sun SPARC hosts.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a Sun SPARC host

The first step for attaching the Sun SPARC host is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that the adapter is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. See the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site if you need to verify that the HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shut down your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing the HBA driver

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) into the host machine, you must download and install the appropriate HBA driver.

Note: If you are working with the Solaris 10 host, the JNI/AMCC HBA is not compatible with your software.

Installing a JNI HBA driver

If your Sun SPARC host contains a JNI host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate JNI driver for the adapter.

1. Restart your host system.

- 2. Download the appropriate JNI driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the specific operating system and then the JNI HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the JNI driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
 - b. Ensure that your JNI HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - c. Note the version number for the JNI HBA driver and click the link (in the **HBA Driver** column). Your browser is redirected to a Web site where you can download the necessary driver files.
 - d. Find the section for the appropriate JNI driver version and download the following files to a local disk:
 - JNIC146x.pkg file for the recommended JNI driver
 - Recommended JNI Fcode
 - EZF 2.2.2.tar
 - **e**. If you downloaded the driver file from a non-Sun host system, transfer the drive file to a Sun SPARC host system.
- Install the JNI HBA driver (JNIC146x.pkg) and the Fcode using the JNI instructions.

Installing an Emulex HBA driver

If your Sun SPARC host contains a Emulex host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate Emulex driver for the adapter.

- 1. Restart your host system.
- 2. Download the appropriate Emulex driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the specific operating system and then the Emulex HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the Emulex driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
 - b. Ensure that your Emulex HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - c. Click the link in the **HBA Driver** column. Your browser is redirected to the Emulex Web site where you can download the necessary driver files.
 - d. Find the section for the appropriate Emulex HBA and driver. Download the tar file for the driver to a local disk.
 - **e**. If you downloaded the driver tar file from a non-Sun host system, transfer the drive file to your Sun SPARC host system.
 - f. Decompress the downloaded tar file until you have the following files:
 - lpfc.1 (which is used to install the HBA driver)

- Two tar.gz files (which are used to install the Emulex HBAnywhere client and the lputil command-line interface utility)
- 3. Install the Emulex HBA driver (lpfc.1) using the instructions on the Emulex Web site.
- 4. Restart the host using the reboot -- -r command.
- 5. Install the Emulex HBAnyware configuration utility and the lputil command-line interface utility using the instructions on the Emulex Web site.
- 6. Restart the host system.

Installing a QLogic HBA driver

If your Sun SPARC host contains a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA), you must download and install the appropriate QLogic driver for the adapter.

- 1. Restart your host system.
- 2. Download the appropriate QLogic driver and associated files using the following steps:
 - a. Go to the supported hardware list on the following Web site and find the specific operating system and then the QLogic HBA that is installed on your host machine.
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
 - The specific versions of the QLogic driver and the associated firmware version are indicated on the hardware list.
 - b. Ensure that your QLogic HBA is running the correct firmware version. If you need to update the firmware to the version listed on the hardware list, click on the link for the firmware version to download and install the correct version.
 - c. Click the link in the HBA Driver column.
 - d. Download the driver file for the driver to a local disk.
 - **e**. If you downloaded the driver file from a non-Sun host system, transfer the drive file to your Sun SPARC host system.
 - f. Decompress the downloaded file.
- 3. Install the QLogic HBA driver using the instructions in the downloaded compressed file.
- 4. Restart the host using the reboot -- -r command.

Configuring the HBA on the Sun SPARC host

After you install the host bus adapter (HBA) and driver on your Sun SPARC host, you must configure the HBAs.

Configuring the JNI HBA

After you have installed the JNI host bus adapter (HBA) and the driver, you must configure the HBA.

To configure a JNI host bus adapter (HBA) for the Solaris operating system, use the following steps.

1. Edit the jnic146x.conf file to set up the HBA connection to the switch fabric so that the file contains the following settings:

```
automap=1; (dynamic binding)
FcLoopEnabled=0;
FcFabricEnabled=1;
TargetOfflineEnable=0;
LunDiscoveryMethod=1; (this is typically the default)
LunRecoveryInterval=10000;
```

Note: If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD) or are SAN booting the machine, you must use static port binding. Otherwise, use dynamic binding.

2. Modify the sd.config file (in the /kernel/drv/ directory) to inform the Solaris operating system about the new SCSI target device and LUNs. For example, if you had four LUNs, you would add lines similar to the following example lines:

```
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=0;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=2;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=3;
```

3. Register the HBA ports and map virtual disks (VDisks) to the host using the following steps.

Note: If a monitor is attached to the host, the user interface will display. If no monitor is attached, you must use an xhost capable client with an attached monitor.

- a. Log on to the attached console of the Sun or the remote host with xhost capability.
- b. Start the EZ Fibre configuration utility by entering the following: /opt/jni/ezfibre/standalone/ezf

The user interface will display a list with both adapters listed, and all of the connected remote ports listed as targets.

- c. Use the SAN Volume Controller command line interface or graphical user interface to register the HBA ports with the SAN Volume Controller.
- d. Create the necessary VDisks and map them to the host.

Note: You can obtain the HBA worldwide port name (WWPN) from the /var/adm/messages file, the EZ Fibre utility, the SVC/SIS candidate HBA port list, or by using the Solaris prtconf tool.

- e. When the VDisks are created and mapped, restart the host with the reboot -- -r command.
- 4. After the host has been restarted, restart the EZ Fibre configuration utility. It should show all of the available VDisks under the listing of their corresponding HBA targets.
- 5. Decide whether you will use dynamic port binding or static (persistent) port binding. If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD) or are SAN booting the machine, you must use static port binding. Otherwise, use dynamic binding.
- 6. If you decide to use static binding, use the following steps to map the SVC/SIS-controlled VDisks to the host with persistent bindings:
 - a. Using the EZ Fibre utility, select an HBA.
 - b. Select the third tab on the HBA panel.
 - c. Click Select All.
 - d. Click Commit.
 - e. Click Activate Changes.

- f. Select the same HBA.
- g. On the first panel, change the **Dynamic Binding** tab to **Disabled**.
- h. Click Commit.
- i. Click **Activate Changes**.
- j. Repeat steps 6a on page 91 through 6i until you have performed it on all of the HBAs.

Attention: The EZ Fibre configuration utility will append any changes to the end of the /kernel/drv/jnic146x.conf file. After multiple reconfigurations, this file can become very large. It is recommended that you make a copy of the jnic146x.conf file after installing the driver and restore it before making any configuration changes.

7. Restart the host and examine the /var/adm/messages file to ensure that the JNI HBA is set up as a switch-fabric connection.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host" on page 109 You can locate the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host by following the steps in this

Parameter settings for the JNI HBAs

As part of the configuration process, set the parameters for the JNI host bus adapters on Sun SPARC hosts.

For the most current information about fibre-channel adapter parameter settings, see http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145.

Configuring the Emulex HBA for Sun SPARC hosts

After you have installed the Emulex host bus adapter (HBA) and the driver on the Sun SPARC host, you must configure the HBA.

To configure the Emulex HBA for a Sun SPARC host, use the following steps:

1. Modify the sd.config file (in the /kernel/drv/ directory) to inform the Solaris operating system about the new SCSI target device and LUNs. For example, if you had four LUNs, you would add lines similar to the following example

```
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=0;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=2;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=3;
```

- 2. Register the HBA ports and map virtual disks (VDisks) to the host using the following steps.
 - a. Log on to the attached console of the Sun or the remote host with xhost capability.
 - b. Start the HBAnyware configuration utility by entering the following: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbanyware
 - The user interface will display a list with both adapters listed, and all of the connected remote ports listed as targets.
 - c. Use the SAN Volume Controller command line interface or graphical user interface to register the HBA ports with the SAN Volume Controller.
 - d. Create the necessary VDisks and map them to the host.

- **Note:** You can obtain the HBA worldwide port name (WWPN) from the /var/adm/messages file, the HBAnyware utility, the SVC/SIS candidate HBA port list, or by using the Solaris prtconf tool.
- e. When the VDisks are created and mapped, restart the host with the reboot -- -r command.
- 3. After the host has been restarted, restart the HBAnyware utility. It should show all of the available VDisks under the listing of their corresponding HBA targets.
- 4. Decide whether you will use dynamic port binding or static port binding. If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD) or are SAN booting the machine, you must use static port binding. Otherwise, use dynamic binding. If you use static port binding with the SAN Volume Controller VDisks, perform the following steps:
 - a. Run the lputil utility by entering the following: /usr/sbin/lpfc/lputil
 - b. From the Main Menu, press 5 (Persistent Bindings).
 - c. From the **Persistent Bindings Menu**, press 1 (Display Current[®] Bindings). Ensure that there are no current bindings. If there are any existing mappings, remove them.
 - d. Again, from the Persistent Bindings Menu, press 5 (Bind Automapped Targets) and then press the appropriate number to select adapter 0.
 Assuming that your SAN Volume Controller has four nodes, you should see four targets.
 - e. Press Enter and then enter Y (Yes) to bind the targets.
 - f. Repeat steps 4d through 4e for adapter 1. After you complete these steps, when you display the current bindings (by pressing 1 from the **Persistent Bindings Menu**), eight persistent targets should display.
- 5. Restart the host and examine the /var/adm/messages file to ensure that the Emulex HBA is set up as a switch-fabric connection.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host" on page 109 You can locate the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host by following the steps in this topic.

Configuring the QLogic HBA for Sun SPARC hosts

After you have installed the QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) and the driver, you must configure the HBA.

To configure the QLogic HBA for Sun SPARC hosts, use the following steps:

- 1. Set up the HBA connection to the switch fabric by editing the qla2300.conf configuration file. (When you install the QLogic driver, this file is installed in the /kernel/drv/ directory.) Make the following changes in the file:
 - a. Set the maximum number of LUNs by adding or editing the following line.
 You can change 8 to the maximum number of LUNs that you need.
 Hba0-maximum-luns-per-target = 8
 - a. Set the HBA to fabric-only mode by including the following line:
 Hba0-connection-options = 2
- 2. Decide whether you must use dynamic port binding or static port binding. If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD) or are SAN booting the machine, you must use static port binding. Otherwise, use dynamic binding. If you use static port binding, make the following changes to the configuration file:

- a. Add a line that is similar to the following example: hba0-SCSI-target-id-2-fibre-channel-port-name = "50057680130018"
- b. Set the Automap parameter to θ as shown below: Automap = θ
- 3. Restart the host and examine the /var/adm/messages file to ensure that the QLogic HBA is set up as a switch-fabric connection.

Configuring the Solaris operating system

You must configure the Solaris operating system before you can use Sun SPARC hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the Solaris operating system, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your Solaris operating system.

- 1. Zone the host system to the SAN Volume Controller on the fibre-channel SAN.
- 2. Install the appropriate multipathing driver for your host system to enable the management of multiple paths to SAN Volume Controller virtual disks (VDisks).

Note: The subsystem device driver (SDD) does not support the Solaris operating system in a clustering environment.

- 3. Create the host system on the SAN Volume Controller, using the worldwide port names (WWPNs). Map the VDisks to the host as required.
- 4. Create volumes/disks on your host using instructions in your host system publications.

Related tasks

"Locating the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host" on page 109 You can locate the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host by following the steps in this topic.

Setting the Sun SPARC host parameters for the HBA

You can set the parameters on the Sun SPARC host to optimize the performance between the HBA and the SAN Volume Controller.

To set the system parameters for optimum performance with the supported HBA, use the following instructions:

- 1. Type cd /etc to change to the /etc subdirectory.
- 2. Back up the system file in the subdirectory.
- 3. Edit the system file, and set the following parameters for servers with configurations that use the HBA:

sd_max_throttle

This sd_max_throttle parameter specifies the maximum number of commands that the sd driver can queue to the host adapter driver. The default value is 256, but you must set the parameter to a value less than or equal to a maximum queue depth for each LUN connected. Determine the value by using the following formula:

```
256 ÷ (LUNs per adapter)
```

where LUNs per adapter is the largest number of LUNs assigned to a single adapter.

To set the sd_max_throttle parameter for the SAN Volume Controller LUNs in this example, you would add the following line to the /etc/system file:

```
set sd:sd_max_throttle=5
```

sd_io_time

This parameter specifies the time-out value for disk operations. Add the following line to the /etc/system file to set the sd_io_time parameter for the SAN Volume Controller LUNs:

```
set sd:sd_io_time=0x78
```

sd_retry_count

This parameter specifies the retry count for disk operations. Add the following line to the /etc/system file to set the sd_retry_count parameter for the SAN Volume Controller LUNs:

```
set sd:sd retry count=5
```

maxphys

This parameter specifies the maximum number of bytes that you can transfer for each SCSI transaction. The default value is 126976 (124 KB). If the I/O block size that you requested exceeds the default value, the request is broken into more than one request. The value should be tuned for the application requirements. For maximum bandwidth, set the maxphys parameter by adding the following line to the /etc/system file:

```
set maxphys=1048576 (1 MB)
```

Note: Do not set the value for maxphys greater than 1048576 (1 MB). Doing so can cause the system to hang.

If you are use the VERITAS Volume Manager on the SAN Volume Controller LUNs, you must set the VxVM maximum I/O size parameter (vol_maxio) to match the maxphys parameter. When you set the maxphys parameter to 1048576 and you use the VERITAS Volume Manager on your SAN Volume Controller LUNs, set the maxphys parameter like in the following sentence:

```
set vxio:vol maxio=2048
```

Discovering new LUNs

The LUN discovery method you must use depends on the type of host bus adapter (HBA) that your Sun SPARC host uses.

Use the following instructions to discover new LUNs:

JNI HBAs

- 1. Run /opt/JNIC146x/jni_update_drv -ar to initiate an HBA driver process to check for new LUNs
- 2. Run devfsadm -C -v to rebuild the device's file system.

Emulex HBAs

Note: Emulex HBAs automatically discover new LUNs. Run devfsadm -C -v to rebuild the device's file system.

QLogic HBAs

Note: QLogic HBAs automatically discover new LUNs. Run devfsadm -C -v to rebuild the device's file system.

Configuring LUNs for use with SDD

If you are using the subsystem device driver (SDD) for multipathing support on a Sun SPARC host, you must use these instructions to configure the LUNs.

The following instructions are based on the SunOS 5.8 Generic_108528–16 version. Use a bash shell as root to correctly configure your path.

You can use the following steps for all HBAs that are used with SDD:

- 1. Delete the following files:
 - /etc/vpathsave.cfg
 - /etc/vpath.cfg
- 2. Use the format command to check for disks.
 - a. If you see disks, proceed to the next step.
 - b. If you do not see disks, verify the configuration of your HBAs and clustering configuration and try again.
 - c. If you still do not see disks, reboot the machine by issuing a reboot -- -rv command.

Note: You may see a "mode sense error" listed for each disk when running format for the first time. This is normal, and will not occur once the disks have been labeled.

- 3. Configure SDD by issuing the cfgvpath -c command.
- 4. Issue the devfsadm -C -v command to scan for disks.
- 5. After the **devfsadm** command completes, issue the vpathmkdev command to create vpaths for the new disks.
- 6. Issue the format command and browse the returned list for your vpaths.
- 7. The devices are now accessible from /dev/dsk/vpath#.

Configuring LUNs for use with VERITAS DMP

If you are using the VERITAS Volume Manager with the Dynamic Multi-Pathing (DMP) for multipathing support on a Sun SPARC host, you must use these instructions to configure the LUNs.

You can use the following steps for all HBAs that are used with the VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP:

- 1. Issue the format command to check for disks.
 - a. If you see disks, proceed to the next step.
 - b. If you do not see disks, verify the configuration of your HBAs and clustering configuration and try again.

Note: You may see a "mode sense error" listed for each disk when running format for the first time. This is normal, and will not occur once the disks have been labeled.

2. Label each device by using the Solaris operating system format command.

- 3. Use the vxdiskadm utility to initialize the disks, using the following steps:
 - a. Start the vxdiskadm utility.
 - b. From the menu, select 21 (Get the newly connected/zoned disks in VxVM view).
 - c. Press c to continue and then press Enter. Wait for the command to complete.
 - d. From the menu, select 1 (Add or initialize one or more disks) and initialize each disk.
- 4. Run the vxdisk list command to see the devices. You can now use the devices to create VERITAS Volume Manager devices when added to a volume group.

Multipath support for Sun SPARC hosts

You must install a multipathing software on all Sun SPARC hosts that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

Multipathing support is available for Sun SPARC hosts using either of the following software:

- Subsystem device driver (SDD)
- VERITAS Volume Manager

SDD dynamic pathing on Sun SPARC hosts

Sun SPARC hosts support subsystem device driver (SDD) dynamic pathing when you add paths to an existing virtual disk (VDisk) or when a new VDisk is mapped to a host.

VERITAS Volume Manager with dynamic pathing on Sun SPARC hosts

Ensure that you are familiar with using VERITAS Volume Manager with the Dynamic Multi-Pathing (DMP) feature on Sun SPARC hosts.

VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP automatically selects the next available I/O path for I/O requests dynamically without action from the administrator. The Volume Manager with DMP is also informed of when you repair or restore a connection and when you add or remove devices after the system has been fully booted (provided that the operating system recognizes the devices correctly). The JNI drivers support the mapping of new VDisks without rebooting the Solaris host.

VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP *does not* support preferred pathing with SAN Volume Controller. VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP does support load balancing across multiple paths with SAN Volume Controller.

Coexistence of SDD and VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP on Sun SPARC hosts

VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP will coexist in "pass-thru" mode with the subsystem device driver (SDD). This means that DMP uses the vpath devices provided by SDD.

The coexistence requires a VERITAS Array Support Library. This can be found on the VERITAS installation media or from VERITAS support.

Clustering support for Sun SPARC hosts

The SAN Volume Controller provides clustering support for Sun SPARC hosts.

Clustering support can be provided for Sun SPARC hosts with the following cluster software:

VERITAS Cluster Server

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported software levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Restriction: When you use clustering software on Sun SPARC hosts, you must use the VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP for multipathing support with the SAN Volume Controller. The subsystem device driver (SDD) is not supported when using Solaris clustering.

SAN boot support for Sun SPARC hosts

SAN boot for Sun SPARC hosts is supported by the SAN Volume Controller.

SAN boot is supported by the Solaris 9 operating system running VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP.

SAN boot is *not* supported when subsystem device driver (SDD) is used as the multipathing software.

See the software restrictions page on the following IBM support Web site for any known restrictions for SAN boot support:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Configuring for SAN boot with Sun SPARC hosts

To use the SAN boot feature with a Sun SPARC host that is using the SAN Volume Controller, the boot disk must be encapsulated by the VERITAS Volume Manager. (Encapsulation is the method for placing the boot disk under Volume Manager's management.)

You must have your VERITAS Volume Manager administrator's guide to complete the following steps.

Use these high-level steps to ensure that your boot disk is encapsulated by the Volume Manager:

- 1. Configure the host bus adapter (HBA) for static port binding.
- 2. Configure the VDisk that is to be used as your SAN boot disk and then map the VDisk to the host.
- 3. Configure the LUNs for use with VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP
- 4. Mirror the boot volume onto the discovered LUNs using the instructions in the VERITAS Volume Manager administrator's guide.
- 5. Configure your HBA for SAN boot.

Related tasks

"Migrating existing SAN boot images" on page 101
If you have a Sun SPARC host and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Configuring a JNI HBA for SAN boot:

To take advantage of the SAN boot feature with a JNI HBA on a Sun SPARC host, you must appropriately configure the HBA.

Before you configure the JNI HBA, ensure that you have already done the following:

- Configured the HBA for static port binding.
- Configured and mapped the VDisk that serves as the SAN boot disk.
- Configured the LUNs for use with VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP.
- Mirrored the boot volume onto the discovered LUNs.
- Installed the correct level of FCode on your HBA. To find the correct level, see the supported hardware list at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To configure the JNI HBA for SAN boot, use the following steps:

1. Change to the OpenBoot prompt. For example, you might type in a command similar to the following:

```
shutdown -i0 -g0 -y
```

- 2. At the OK prompt, type setenv auto-boot? false. This command specifies that the system will not reboot after a power failure or after using the reset command.
- 3. Type setenv use-nvramrc? true to enable script interpretation.
- 4. Type reset-all to clear the system's registers.
- 5. Type devalias to identify the device aliases and the associated paths of devices that are connected to the system. Note the device alias of the HBA, which presents your SAN boot volume.
- 6. Select the HBA device by typing " /devicestring" select-dev, where /devicestring is the device alias string that you wrote down. The following command is an example:
 - " /pci@1f,2000/JNI,FCR@1" select-dev

Note: There is a space between the opening quotation mark and the forward slash.

- 7. Type set-pconfig.
- 8. Type set-speed.
- 9. Run probe-scsi-all and note the WWPN associated with the boot volume.
- 10. Type set-bootp-wwn and enter the WWPN found in step 9.
- 11. Type set-nvp-valid and type FF as the offset when prompted
- 12. Type reset-all.
- 13. Type boot vx-disk -rv, where disk is the name of your boot disk.

Configuring an Emulex HBA for SAN boot:

To take advantage of the SAN boot feature with an Emulex host bus adapter (HBA) on a Sun SPARC host, you must appropriately configure the HBA.

Before you configure the Emulex HBA, ensure that you have already done the following:

- Configured the HBA for static port binding.
- Configured and mapped the VDisk that serves as the SAN boot disk.
- Configured the LUNs for use with VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP.

- Mirrored the boot volume onto the discovered LUNs.
- Installed the correct level of FCode on your HBA. To find the correct level, see the supported hardware list at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To configure the Emulex HBA for SAN boot, use the following steps:

- 1. Start the lputil utility (/usr/sbin/lpfc/lputil).
- 2. At the main menu, enter 3 (Firmware Maintenance).
- 3. At the firmware maintenance menu, enter 6 (Boot BIOS Maintenance). If the boot code is currently disabled, press 1 to enable it.
- 4. Change to the OpenBoot prompt. For example, you might type in a command similar to the following:

```
shutdown -i0 -g0 -y
```

Note: An ok displays for the prompt when you are at the OpenBoot prompt.

- 5. Type seteny auto-boot? false. This command specifies that the system will not reboot after a power failure or after using the reset command.
- 6. Type setenv use-nvramrc? true to enable script interpretation.
- 7. Type reset-all to clear the system's registers.
- 8. Type devalias to identify the device aliases and the associated paths of devices that are connected to the system. Note the device alias of the HBA, which presents your SAN boot volume.
- 9. Select the HBA device by typing " /devicestring" select-dev, where /devicestring is the device alias string that you wrote down. The following command is an example:

```
" /pci@1f,2000/lpfc@1" select-dev
```

Note: There is a space between the opening quotation mark and the forward slash.

- 10. Type set-default-mode to reset the HBA parameters.
- 11. Type set-ptp to set the HBA to point mode.
- 12. Run probe-scsi-all. Note the WWPN associated with the boot volume, along with its LUN and target IDs. You will use this information for the next step.
- 13. Type WWPN yourwwpn lun targetid, where yourwwpn is the WWPN associated with the boot volume, *lun* is the associated LUN, and *targetid* is the associated target ID. The following command is an example: WWPN 5005076803041234 0 3
- 14. Type reset-all.
- 15. Type boot vx-*disk* -rv, where *disk* is the name of your boot disk.

Configuring a QLogic HBA for SAN boot:

To take advantage of the SAN boot feature with a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) on a Sun SPARC host, you must appropriately configure the HBA.

Before you configure the QLogic HBA, ensure that you have already done the following:

- Configured the HBA for static port binding.
- Configured and mapped the VDisk that serves as the SAN boot disk.
- Configured the LUNs for use with VERITAS Volume Manager with DMP.

- Mirrored the boot volume onto the discovered LUNs.
- Installed the correct level of FCode on your HBA. To find the correct level, see the supported hardware list at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To configure the QLogic HBA for SAN boot, use the following steps:

1. Change to the OpenBoot prompt. For example, you might type in a command similar to the following:

```
shutdown -i0 -g0 -y
```

Note: An ok displays for the prompt when you are at the OpenBoot prompt.

- 2. Type setenv auto-boot? false. This command specifies that the system will not reboot after a power failure or after using the reset command.
- 3. Type setenv use-nvramrc? true to enable script interpretation.
- 4. Type reset-all to clear the system's registers.
- 5. Type show-devs to identify the device aliases and the associated paths of devices that are connected to the system. Write down the device alias of the first QLogic HBA.
- 6. Select the HBA device by typing " /devicestring" select-dev, where /devicestring is the device alias string that you wrote down. The following command is an example:
 - " /pci@1f,0/pci@1/QLGC,qla@4" select-dev

Note: There is a space between the opening quotation mark and the forward slash.

- 7. Type show-children and write down the WWPN, loop ID and LUN of the boot device.
- 8. Type WWPN yourwwpn loopid lun set-boot-id, where yourwwpn is the WWPN associated with the boot volume, *loopid* is the associated loop ID, and *lun* is the associated LUN. The following command is an example: 5005076812345678 80 0 set-boot-id
- 9. Type reset-all.
- 10. Type boot vx-disk -rv, where disk is the name of your boot disk.

Migrating existing SAN boot images

If you have a Sun SPARC host and existing SAN boot images that are controlled by storage controllers, you can migrate these images to image-mode virtual disks (VDisks) that are controlled by the SAN Volume Controller.

Perform the following steps to migrate your existing SAN boot images:

- 1. Shut down the host.
- 2. Perform the following configuration changes on the storage controller:
 - a. Remove all the image-to-host mappings from the storage controller.
 - b. Map the existing SAN boot image and any other disks that you want to present to the SAN Volume Controller.
- 3. Zone one port of each host bus adapter (HBA) to one of the SAN Volume Controller ports that is associated with the I/O group for the target image-mode VDisk.
- 4. Perform the following configuration changes on the SAN Volume Controller:

- a. Create an image-mode VDisk for the managed disk (MDisk) that contains the SAN boot image. Use the MDisk unique identifier to specify the correct MDisk.
- b. Create a host object and assign it to the HBA port that you zoned to SAN Volume Controller port in step 3 on page 101.
- c. Map the image mode VDisk to the host. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 0.
- d. Map the swap disk to the host, if required. For example, you might map the swap disk to the host with SCSI LUN ID 1.

Related tasks

"Configuring for SAN boot with Sun SPARC hosts" on page 98 To use the SAN boot feature with a Sun SPARC host that is using the SAN Volume Controller, the boot disk must be encapsulated by the VERITAS Volume Manager. (Encapsulation is the method for placing the boot disk under Volume Manager's management.)

Chapter 13. Attaching to a host running a VMware operating system

This information explains the requirements and other information for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a variety of guest host operating systems running on the VMware operating system.

Attachment requirements for hosts running VMware operating systems

This section provides an overview of the requirements for attaching the SAN Volume Controller to a host running on a VMware operating system.

- Ensure that there are enough fibre-channel adapters installed in the server to handle the total LUNs that you want to attach.
- Ensure that you have the documentation for the VMware operating system, the guest host operating system, and the *IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller: Installation Guide*. All SAN Volume Controller publications are available from the following Web site:
 - http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145
- Ensure that you have installed the correct operating systems and version levels
 on your host. Be sure to review the device driver installation documents and
 configuration utility documents for any additional VMware or guest operating
 system patches that you might need.

Supported environments for hosts running VMware operating systems

Ensure that each host running on a VMware operating system uses a supported level of VMware and a supported guest operating system.

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts that run the VMware operating system levels and guest operating systems listed in Table 26.

Table 26. Supported operating systems for hosts running on a VMware operating system

Operating system levels	Guest operating systems	
VMware ESX Server	Windows 2000 Advanced Server and Clustering	
	Windows 2003 Server, Enterprise Edition and Clustering	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 and 3.0	
	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 and 9	
	Novell NetWare	

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about supported host operating systems:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported HBAs for hosts running VMware operating systems

Ensure that your hosts running on VMware operating systems use the correct host bus adapters (HBAs).

The SAN Volume Controller supports hosts running on VMware operating systems that use the following types of HBAs:

- QLogic (on IBM xSeries platforms)
- HS20 and HS40 (on IBM BladeCenter platforms)

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about HBA and platform levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Supported drivers and firmware for hosts running VMware operating systems

Be sure that you use the correct host bus adapter device driver and firmware levels for hosts running on a VMware operating system.

The following IBM Web site provides current interoperability information about device driver and firmware levels:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Installing the HBA on a host running a VMware operating system

The first step for attaching the host on a VMware operating system is to install the host bus adapter (HBA).

Before you install the HBA, ensure that it is supported by the SAN Volume Controller. See the supported hardware list at the following IBM Web site if you need to verify that the HBA is supported:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

To install the HBA, use the following general steps:

- 1. Shutdown your host and its attached peripherals, following the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Install the HBA, using the adapter manufacturer's installation instructions.

Installing the HBA drivers for hosts running VMware operating systems

Follow the instructions provided by VMware to install the HBA drivers and firmware. Installing these components should be part of the VMware installation and setup process.

Configuring the VMware operating system

You must configure the VMware operating system and the guest operating system before you can use hosts running on a VMware platform with the SAN Volume Controller.

Before you configure the host operating systems, the following tasks must be completed:

- An IBM service representative must have installed the SAN Volume Controller.
- You must have installed the appropriate host bus adapters.

After the prerequisite tasks are complete, use the following general steps to configure your host system.

- 1. Define the host system with the worldwide port name identifiers. You will have to locate the list of worldwide port names.
- 2. Define the fibre-channel port configuration if it was not done during the installation of the SAN Volume Controller or fibre-channel adapters.
- 3. Configure the host system for the SAN Volume Controller by using the instructions in your VMware and guest operating system publications.

Multipath support for hosts running VMware operating systems

You must install a multipathing software on all hosts running VMware operating systems that are attached to the SAN Volume Controller.

On hosts that run a VMware operating system, the following software provides multipathing support:

· VMware multipathing software

VMware multipathing software dynamic pathing

VMware multipathing software does not support dynamic pathing.

Preferred paths set in SAN Volume Controller are ignored.

VMware multipathing software performs static load balancing for I/O, based upon a host setting that defines the preferred path for a given volume.

Multipathing configuration maximums for hosts running VMware operating systems

When you configure, keep in mind the maximum configuration for the VMware multipathing software.

Table 27 provides the maximum SCSI devices and paths per virtual disk (VDisk).

Table 27. Configuration maximums for VMware multipathing software

Object	VMware maximum	Description
SCSI devices	256	The maximum number of SCSI devices supported by the VMware software. Note that each path to a VDisk equates to a single SCSI device
Paths per VDisk	4	The maximum number of paths to each VDisk.

Clustering support for hosts running VMware operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller does not provide clustering support on VMware guest operating systems.

SAN boot support for hosts running VMware operating systems

The SAN Volume Controller can be used as a boot device for the VMware guest operating system.

For SAN boot support for hosts running a VMware operating system, you must meet the following requirement:

• The guest operating system must be on a SAN disk.

See the software restrictions page on the following IBM support Web site for any other restrictions for SAN boot support:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Chapter 14. Fibre-channel port name identification

This is an overview of the fibre-channel port name identification for the following host systems:

- HP 9000
- HP AlphaServer
- IBM System p5, eServer, or RS/6000
- Linux
- Sun
- Windows 2000 and Windows 2003
- · Windows NT
- VMware

The WWPN consists of 16 hexadecimal characters (0 - 9 and A - F). The SAN Volume Controller uses it to uniquely identify the fibre-channel HBA that is installed in your host system. The SAN Volume Controller automatically finds the WWPN for your host fibre-channel HBA when you attach your host system to the SAN Volume Controller.

Note: If your host uses more than one fibre-channel HBA to connect to your SAN Volume Controller, you must add multiple entries to the host list for this host. You must add one for each fibre-channel HBA. Each HBA will have a unique WWPN.

The format and content of the fibre-channel port identifier are determined by the manufacturer of the link control facility for the applicable fibre-channel port. The identifier is an eight-byte field, which the fibre-channel protocols use to uniquely identify the fibre-channel port.

Locating the WWPN for an HP host

You can locate the WWPN for an HP (Hewlett-Packard) host by following the steps in this topic.

- 1. Go to the root directory.
- 2. Type: ioscan -fnC fc
- 3. Look under the description for the Fibre Channel Mass Storage adapter. For example, look for the device path name /dev/td1 or /dev/fcms1.
- 4. Type: fcmsutil /dev/td1 where /dev/td1 is the path.

Locating the WWPN for an IBM System p5, eServer, or an RS/6000 AIX host

You can locate the WWPN for an IBM System p5, eServer or an RS/6000 AIX host by following the steps in this topic.

- 1. Log in as root.
- 2. Type lscfg -vl fcsx, where x is the adapter number. The network address is the fibre-channel adapter port WWPN value.

Related tasks

"Configuring the AIX operating system" on page 24 You must configure the AIX operating system before you can use IBM System p hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Locating the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system

You can locate the WWPN for a host running the Linux operating system with a QLogic adapter by following the steps in this topic.

- 1. Restart the server.
- 2. Press Alt+Q to get the FAST!Util menu.

If you have more than one fibre-channel host bus adapter (HBA) installed, all the fibre-channel HBA are displayed. Scroll down to the adapter you want. Press Enter.

- 3. From the FAST!Util menu, scroll down and select Select Host Adapter.
- 4. Scroll up and highlight Configuration Settings. Press Enter.
- 5. From the Configuration Settings menu, click Host Adapter Settings.
- 6. Write down the 16-digit alphanumeric string that is displayed.

Related tasks

"Configuring the Linux operating system" on page 33 You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Linux operating system with the SAN Volume Controller.

"Configuring the Linux operating system" on page 49
You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Linux operating system with the SAN Volume Controller.

Locating the WWPN for a host running the Microsoft Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system

Determining the WWPN of a host that runs a Windows operating system depends on the type of HBA in your host server.

For Qlogic, you can use the SANsurfer GUI/IBM FAStT MSJ (management suite java) if you have it, or restart the host and enter ctrl+Q to enter the Qlogic BIOS, where you can find the HBA WWPNS.

For Emulex hosts, use the elxcfg tool that is packaged with the firmware. This opens in the Windows operating system and does not require a restart.

Related tasks

"Configuring the Windows 2000 and 2003 operating system" on page 62 You must configure the Windows 2000 or 2003 operating system before you can use the hosts with the SAN Volume Controller.

Locating the WWPN for a host running the Windows NT operating system

You can locate the worldwide port names (WWPNs) for a host running the Windows NT operating system with a QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) within the QLogic BIOS.

Restart the host and enter ctrl+Q to enter the Qlogic BIOS. There you will find the HBA WWPNs.

Related tasks

1

"Configuring the Windows NT operating system" on page 80 You must configure the operating system before you can use hosts running the Windows NT operating system.

Locating the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host

You can locate the WWPN for a Sun SPARC host by following the steps in this topic.

- 1. After you install the adapter and you restart the host system, view the /var/adm/messages file.
- 2. Search for the line that contains the applicable phrase for your host bus adapter (HBA):
 - a. For the JNI SBUS HBA, search for fcawx: Fibre Channel WWNN, where *x* is the adapter number (0, 1, and so on). You can find the WWPN on the same line immediately after the WWNN.
 - b. For the JNI PCI HBA, search for fca-pcix: Fibre Channel WWNN, where *x* is the adapter number (0, 1, and so on). You can find the WWPN on the same line following the WWNN.
 - c. For the QLogic QLA2200F HBA, search for qla2200-hbax-adapter-portname where x is the adapter number (0, 1, and so on).

Locating the WWPNs for a host running a VMware operating system

You can locate the worldwide port names (WWPNs) for a host running a VMware operating system.

Perform the following steps to locate the WWPNs for the host:

- 1. Open the VMware Management Interface and click the **Options** tab.
- 2. Select Storage Management. and then in the new window
- 3. Click the **Adapter bindings** tab. The WWPN will then be listed at the end of each port heading line, which are the lines starting with vmhba. For example, in the following line, **21:00:00:E0:8B:1A:E4:C6** is the WWPN of the HBA port: vmhba0: QLogic Corp QLA231x/2340 (rev 02) (21:00:00:E0:8B:1A:E4:C6)

Accessibility

Accessibility features help a user who has a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully.

Features

These are the major accessibility features in the SAN Volume Controller master console:

- You can use screen-reader software and a digital speech synthesizer to hear what
 is displayed on the screen. The following screen readers have been tested: JAWS
 v4.5 and IBM Home Page Reader v3.0.
- You can operate all features using the keyboard instead of the mouse.

Navigating by keyboard

You can use keys or key combinations to perform operations and initiate many menu actions that can also be done through mouse actions. You can navigate the SAN Volume Controller Console and help system from the keyboard by using the following key combinations:

- To traverse to the next link, button, or topic, press Tab inside a frame (page).
- To expand or collapse a tree node, press → or ←, respectively.
- To move to the next topic node, press V or Tab.
- To move to the previous topic node, press ^ or Shift+Tab.
- To scroll all the way up or down, press Home or End, respectively.
- To go back, press Alt+←.
- To go forward, press Alt+→.
- To go to the next frame, press Ctrl+Tab.
- To move to the previous frame, press Shift+Ctrl+Tab.
- To print the current page or active frame, press Ctrl+P.
- To select, press Enter.

Accessing the publications

You can view the publications for the SAN Volume Controller in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) using the Adobe Acrobat Reader. The PDFs are provided at the following Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/support/2145

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATIONS "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurement may have been

estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document may verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products may be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

- AIX
- BladeCenter
- Enterprise Storage Server
- FlashCopy
- IBM
- · IBM eServer
- IBM TotalStorage
- IBM System Storage
- System p5
- System z9
- · System Storage
- TotalStorage
- xSeries

Intel and Pentium are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Electronic emission notices

The following electronic emission statements apply to this product. The statements for other products that are intended for use with this product are included in their accompanying documentation.

China Class A EMC compliance in Simplified Chinese

Ensure that you are familiar with the China Class A EMC compliance in Simplified Chinese statement.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may need to perform practical actions.

声明

此为A级产品,在生活环境中,该产品可能会造成无线电干扰, 在这种情况下,可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) statement.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, might cause interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. Neither the provider nor the manufacturer is responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device might not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that might cause undesired operation.

Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) statement.

This product is a Class A Information Technology Equipment and conforms to the standards set by the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). In a domestic environment, this product might cause radio interference, in which event the user might be required to take adequate measures.

Korean Government Ministry of Communication (MOC) statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the Korean Government Ministry of Communication (MOC) statement.

Please note that this device has been approved for business purposes with regard to electromagnetic interference. If you find that this device is not suitable for your use, you can exchange it for one that is approved for non-business purposes.

New Zealand compliance statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the New Zealand compliance statement.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product might cause radio interference, in which event the user might be required to take adequate measures.

International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) statement

This product has been designed and built to comply with (IEC) Standard 950.

Avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada

Ensure that you are familiar with the avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with IECS-003.

United Kingdom telecommunications requirements

This apparatus is manufactured to the International Safety Standard EN60950 and as such is approved in the U.K. under approval number NS/G/1234/J/100003 for indirect connection to public telecommunications systems in the United Kingdom.

European Union (EU) statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the European Union (EU) statement.

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU council directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. Neither the provider nor the

manufacturer can accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of option cards not supplied by the manufacturer.

Radio protection for Germany

Ensure that you are familiar with the radio protection for Germany.

Zulassungsbescheinigung laut Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) vom 30, August 1995.

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt in Übereinstimmung mit dem deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen zu führen.

Der Aussteller der Konformitätserklärung ist die IBM Deutschland.

Informationen in Hinsicht EMVG Paragraph 3 Abs. (2):

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 50082-1 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

EN55022 Klasse A Geräte bedürfen folgender Hinweise:

Nach dem EMVG: "Geräte dürfen an Orten, für die sie nicht ausreichend entstört sind, nur mit besonderer Genehmigung des Bundesministeriums für Post und Telekommunikation oder des Bundesamtes für Post und Telekommunikation betrieben werden. Die Genehmigung wird erteilt, wenn keine elektromagnetischen Störungen zu erwarten sind." (Auszug aus dem EMVG, Para.3, Abs.4). Dieses Genehmigungsverfahren ist nach Paragraph 9 EMVG in Verbindung mit der entsprechenden Kostenverordnung (Amtsblatt 14/93) kostenpflichtig.

Nach der EN 55022: "Dies ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funkstörungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Massnahmen durchzuführen und dafür aufzukommen."

Anmerkung: Um die Einhaltung des EMVG sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte wie in den Handbüchern angegeben zu installieren und zu betreiben.

Taiwan Class A compliance statement

Ensure that you are familiar with the Taiwan Class A compliance statement.

警告使用者:

這是甲類的資訊產品,在居住的環境中使用 時,可能會造成射頻干擾,在這種情況下, 使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Glossary

This glossary includes terms for the IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller.

This glossary includes selected terms and definitions from A Dictionary of Storage Networking Terminology (http://www.snia.org/education/dictionary), copyrighted 2001 by the Storage Networking Industry Association, 2570 West El Camino Real, Suite 304, Mountain View, California 94040-1313. Definitions derived from this book have the symbol (S) after the definition.

The following cross-references are used in this glossary:

See Refers the reader to one of two kinds of related information:

- A term that is the expanded form of an abbreviation or acronym. This expanded form of the term contains the full definition.
- A synonym or more preferred term.

See also

Refers the reader to one or more related terms.

Contrast with

Refers the reader to a term that has an opposite or substantively different meaning.

access mode

One of three different modes in which a logical unit (LU) in a disk controller system can operate. See also *image mode, managed space mode,* and *unconfigured mode*.

agent code

An open-systems standard that interprets Common Information Model (CIM) requests and responses as they transfer between the client application and the device.

application server

A host that is attached to the storage area network (SAN) and that runs applications.

array An ordered collection, or group, of physical storage devices that are used to define logical volumes or devices.

association

A class that contains two references that define a relationship between two referenced objects.

asymmetric virtualization

A virtualization technique in which the virtualization engine is outside the data path and performs a metadata-style service. The metadata server contains all the mapping and locking tables while the storage devices contain only data. See also *symmetric virtualization*.

auxiliary virtual disk

The virtual disk that contains a backup copy of the data and that is used in disaster recovery scenarios. See also *master virtual disk*.

availability

The ability of a system to continue working, with perhaps a decrease in performance, after individual components fail.

bandwidth

The range of frequencies an electronic system can transmit or receive. The greater the bandwidth of a system, the more information the system can transfer in a given period of time.

blade One component in a system that is designed to accept some number of components (blades). Blades could be individual servers that plug into a multiprocessing system or individual port cards that add connectivity to a switch. A blade is typically a hot-swappable hardware device.

block A unit of data storage on a disk drive.

block virtualization

The act of applying virtualization to one or more block-based (storage) services for the purpose of providing a new aggregated, higher-level, richer, simpler, or secure block service to clients. Block virtualization functions can be nested. A disk drive, RAID system, or volume manager all perform some form of block-address to (different) block-address mapping or aggregation. See also *virtualization*.

Boolean

Pertaining to the processes used in the algebra formulated by George Boole.

cache A high-speed memory or storage device used to reduce the effective time required to read data from or write data to lower-speed memory or a device. Read cache holds data in anticipation that it will be requested by a client. Write cache holds data written by a client until it can be safely stored on more permanent storage media such as disk or tape.

Call Home

A communication service that links a machine to a service provider. The machine can use this link to place a call to IBM or to another service provider when service is required. With access to the machine, service personnel can perform service tasks, such as viewing error and problem logs or initiating trace and dump retrievals.

cascading

The process of connecting two or more fibre-channel hubs or switches together to increase the number of ports or extend distances.

CIM See Common Information Model.

CIM object manager (CIMOM)

The common conceptual framework for data management that receives, validates, and authenticates the CIM requests from the client application. It then directs the requests to the appropriate component or service provider.

CIMOM

See CIM object manager.

Cisco command-line interface

An interface that is used to perform functions that are provided on the service panel.

class The definition of an object within a specific hierarchy. A class can have properties and methods and can serve as the target of an association.

CLI See command line interface.

client A computer system or process that requests a service of another computer system or process that is typically referred to as a server. Multiple clients can share access to a common server.

client application

A storage management program that initiates Common Information Model (CIM) requests to the CIM agent for the device.

cluster

In SAN Volume Controller, a pair of nodes that provides a single configuration and service interface.

command line-interface (CLI)

A type of computer interface in which the input command is a string of text characters.

Common Information Model (CIM)

A set of standards developed by the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). CIM provides a conceptual framework for storage management and an open approach to the design and implementation of storage systems, applications, databases, networks, and devices.

concurrent maintenance

Service that is performed on a unit while it is operational.

configuration node

A node that acts as the focal point for configuration commands and manages the data that describes the cluster configuration.

connected

In a Global Mirror relationship, pertaining to the status condition that occurs when two clusters can communicate.

consistency group

A group of copy relationships between virtual disks that are managed as a single entity.

consistent copy

In a Global Mirror relationship, a copy of a secondary virtual disk (VDisk) that is identical to the primary VDisk from the viewpoint of a host system, even if a power failure occurred while I/O activity was in progress.

consistent-stopped

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when the secondary virtual disk (VDisk) contains a consistent image, but the image might be out-of-date with respect to the primary VDisk. This state can happen when a relationship was in the consistent-synchronized state when an error occurred that forced a freeze of the consistency group. This state can also happen when a relationship is created with the create-consistent flag set to TRUE.

consistent-synchronized

In a Global Mirror relationship, the status condition that occurs when the primary virtual disk (VDisk) is accessible for read and write I/O operations. The secondary VDisk is accessible for read-only I/O operations. See also primary virtual disk and secondary virtual disk.

container

- IBM definition: A visual user-interface component that holds objects.
- HP definition:
 - 1. Any entity that is capable of storing data, whether it is a physical device or a group of physical devices.

2. A virtual, internal controller structure representing either a single disk or a group of disk drives linked as a storageset. Stripesets and mirrorsets are examples of storageset containers that the controller uses to create units.

copied

In a FlashCopy relationship, a state that indicates that a copy has been started after the copy relationship was created. The copy process is complete and the target disk has no further dependence on the source disk.

copying

A status condition that describes the state of a pair of virtual disks (VDisks) that have a copy relationship. The copy process has been started but the two virtual disks are not yet synchronized.

Copy Services

The two services that enable you to copy virtual disks (VDisks): FlashCopy and Global Mirror.

counterpart SAN

A nonredundant portion of a redundant storage area network (SAN). A counterpart SAN provides all the connectivity of the redundant SAN but without the redundancy. Each counterpart SANs provides an alternate path for each SAN-attached device. See also redundant SAN.

cross-volume consistency

In SAN Volume Controller, a consistency group property that guarantees consistency between virtual disks when an application issues dependent write operations that span multiple virtual disks.

data migration

The movement of data from one physical location to another without disrupting I/O operations.

degraded

Pertaining to a valid configuration that has suffered a failure but continues to be supported and legal. Typically, a repair action can be performed on a degraded configuration to restore it to a valid configuration.

dense wavelength division multiplexing (DWDM)

A technology that places many optical signals onto one single-mode fiber using slightly different optical frequencies. DWDM enables many data streams to be transferred in parallel.

dependent write operations

A set of write operations that must be applied in the correct order to maintain cross-volume consistency.

destage

A write command initiated by the cache to flush data to disk storage.

device

- In the CIM Agent, the storage server that processes and hosts client application requests.
- IBM definition: A piece of equipment that is used with the computer and does not generally interact directly with the system, but is controlled by a controller.
- HP definition: In its physical form, a magnetic disk that can be attached to a SCSI bus. The term is also used to indicate a physical device that has been made part of a controller configuration; that is, a physical

device provider

A device-specific handler that serves as a plug-in for the Common Information Model (CIM); that is, the CIM object manager (CIMOM) uses the handler to interface with the device.

directed maintenance procedures

The set of maintenance procedures that can be run for a cluster. These procedures are run from within the SAN Volume Controller application and are documented in the service guide.

disconnected

In a Global Mirror relationship, pertains to two clusters when they cannot communicate.

discovery

The automatic detection of a network topology change, for example, new and deleted nodes or links.

disk controller

A device that coordinates and controls the operation of one or more disk drives and synchronizes the operation of the drives with the operation of the system as a whole. Disk controllers provide the storage that the cluster detects as managed disks (MDisks).

disk drive

A disk-based, nonvolatile, storage medium.

disk zone

A zone defined in the storage area network (SAN) fabric in which the SAN Volume Controller can detect and address the logical units that the disk controllers present.

Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF)

An organization that defines standards for the management of distributed systems. See also Common Information Model.

DMTF

See Distributed Management Task Force.

domain name server

In the Internet suite of protocols, a server program that supplies name-to-address conversion by mapping domain names to IP addresses.

DRAM

See dynamic random access memory.

DWDM

See Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing.

dynamic random access memory (DRAM)

A storage in which the cells require repetitive application of control signals to retain stored data.

EC See engineering change.

empty In a Global Mirror relationship, a status condition that exists when the consistency group contains no relationships.

Ι

engineering change (EC)

A correction for a defect of hardware or software that is applied to a product.

error code

A value that identifies an error condition.

See IBM TotalStorage[®] Enterprise Storage Server[®]. ESS

exclude

To remove a managed disk (MDisk) from a cluster because of certain error conditions.

excluded

In SAN Volume Controller, the status of a managed disk that the cluster has removed from use after repeated access errors.

extent A unit of data that manages the mapping of data between managed disks and virtual disks.

fabric In fibre-channel technology, a routing structure, such as a switch, that receives addressed information and routes it to the appropriate destination. A fabric can consist of more than one switch. When multiple fibre-channel switches are interconnected, they are described as cascading. See also cascading.

fabric port (F_port)

A port that is part of a fibre-channel fabric. An F_port on a fibre-channel fabric connects to the node port (N_port) on a node.

failover

In SAN Volume Controller, the function that occurs when one redundant part of the system takes over the workload of another part of the system that has failed.

FC See fibre channel.

fibre channel

A technology for transmitting data between computer devices at a data rate of up to 4 Gbps. It is especially suited for attaching computer servers to shared storage devices and for interconnecting storage controllers and drives.

fibre-channel extender

A long-distance communication device that interconnects storage area network (SAN) fabric components.

field replaceable unit

An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its components fails. In some cases, a field replaceable unit might contain other field replaceable units.

FlashCopy mapping

A relationship between two virtual disks.

FlashCopy relationship

See *FlashCopy* mapping.

FlashCopy service

In SAN Volume Controller, a copy service that duplicates the contents of a source virtual disk (VDisk) to a target VDisk. In the process, the original contents of the target VDisk are lost. See also point-in-time copy.

F_port See *fabric port*.

FRU See field replaceable unit.

fuzzy copy

In Global Mirror, the copy that is provided when running in the asynchronous mode. The target virtual disk (VDisk) is not necessarily consistent with the source VDisk at every point in time. The host application writes data to the source VDisk and receives the final status on the write operation before the data is actually written to the target VDisk.

gateway

An entity that operates above the link layer and translates, when required, the interface and protocol used by one network into those used by another distinct network.

GB See gigabyte.

GBIC See gigabit interface converter.

gigabit interface converter (GBIC)

An interface module that converts the light stream from a fibre-channel cable into electronic signals for use by the network interface card.

gigabyte (GB)

In decimal notation, 1 073 741 824 bytes.

Global Mirror

An asynchronous copy service that enables host data on a particular source virtual disk (VDisk) to be copied to the target VDisk that is designated in the relationship.

In a FlashCopy bitmap, the unit of data represented by a single bit. grain

hardcoded

Pertaining to software instructions that are statically encoded and not intended to be altered.

HBA See host bus adapter.

HLUN

See virtual disk.

An open-systems computer that is connected to the SAN Volume Controller through a fibre-channel interface.

host bus adapter (HBA)

In SAN Volume Controller, an interface card that connects a host bus, such as a peripheral component interconnect (PCI) bus, to the storage area network.

host ID

In SAN Volume Controller, a numeric identifier assigned to a group of host fibre-channel ports for the purpose of logical unit number (LUN) mapping. For each host ID, there is a separate mapping of Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) IDs to virtual disks (VDisks).

host zone

A zone defined in the storage area network (SAN) fabric in which the hosts can address the SAN Volume Controllers.

hub A fibre-channel device that connects nodes into a logical loop by using a physical star topology. Hubs will automatically recognize an active node and insert the node into the loop. A node that fails or is powered off is automatically removed from the loop.

hub A communications infrastructure device to which nodes on a multi-point bus or loop are physically connected. Commonly used in Ethernet and fibre-channel networks to improve the manageability of physical cables. Hubs maintain the logical loop topology of the network of which they are a part, while creating a "hub and spoke" physical star layout. Unlike switches, hubs do not aggregate bandwidth. Hubs typically support the addition or removal of nodes from the bus while it is operating. (S) Contrast with *switch*.

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server (ESS)

An IBM product that provides an intelligent disk-storage subsystem across an enterprise.

ID See identifier.

identifier (ID)

A sequence of bits or characters that identifies a user, program device, or system to another user, program device, or system.

idle In a FlashCopy relationship, the state that occurs when the source and target virtual disks (VDisks) act as independent VDisks even if a mapping exists between the two. Read and write caching is enabled for both the source and the target.

idling

- The status of a pair of virtual disks (VDisks) that have a defined copy relationship for which no copy activity has yet been started.
- In a Global Mirror relationship, that state that indicates that the master virtual disks (VDisks) and auxiliary VDisks are operating in the primary role. Consequently, both VDisks are accessible for write I/O operations.

idling-disconnected

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when the virtual disks (VDisks) in this half of the consistency group are all operating in the primary role and can accept read or write I/O operations.

illegal configuration

A configuration that will not operate and will generate an error code to indicate the cause of the problem.

image mode

An access mode that establishes a one-to-one mapping of extents in the managed disk (MDisk) with the extents in the virtual disk (VDisk). See also *managed space mode* and *unconfigured mode*.

image VDisk

A virtual disk (VDisk) in which there is a direct block-for-block translation from the managed disk (MDisk) to the VDisk.

IML See initial microcode load.

inconsistent

In a Global Mirror relationship, pertaining to a secondary virtual disk (VDisk) that is being synchronized with the primary VDisk.

inconsistent-copying

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when the primary virtual disk (VDisk) is accessible for read and write input/output (I/O) operations, but the secondary VDisk is not accessible for either. This state occurs after a **start** command is issued to a consistency group that is in the

inconsistent-stopped state. This state also occurs when a start command is issued, with the force option, to a consistency group that is in the idling or consistent-stopped state.

inconsistent-disconnected

In a Global Mirror relationship, a state that occurs when the virtual disks (VDisks) in the half of the consistency group that is operating in the secondary role are not accessible for either read or write I/O operations.

inconsistent-stopped

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when the primary virtual disk (VDisk) is accessible for read and write input/output (I/O) operations, but the secondary VDisk is not accessible for either read or write I/O operations.

indication

An object representation of an event.

initial microcode load (IML)

In SAN Volume Controller, the process by which the run-time code and data for a node are loaded into memory and initialized.

initiator

The system component that originates an I/O command over an I/O bus or network. I/O adapters, network interface cards, and intelligent controller device I/O bus control ASICs are typical initiators. (S) See also logical unit number.

input/output (I/O)

Pertaining to a functional unit or communication path involved in an input process, an output process, or both, concurrently or not, and to the data involved in such a process.

instance

An individual object that is a member of some class. In object-oriented programming, an object is created by instantiating a class.

integrity

The ability of a system to either return only correct data or respond that it cannot return correct data.

Internet Protocol (IP)

In the Internet suite of protocols, a connectionless protocol that routes data through a network or interconnected networks and acts as an intermediary between the higher protocol layers and the physical network.

interoperability

The capability to communicate, run programs, or transfer data among various functional units in a way that requires the user to have little or no knowledge of the unique characteristics of those units.

Inter-Switch Link (ISL)

A protocol for interconnecting multiple routers and switches in a storage area network.

I/O See input/output.

I/O group

A collection of virtual disks (VDisks) and node relationships that present a common interface to host systems.

I/O throttling rate

The maximum rate at which an I/O transaction is accepted for this virtual disk (VDisk).

IP See Internet Protocol.

IP address

The unique 32-bit address that specifies the location of each device or workstation in the Internet. For example, 9.67.97.103 is an IP address.

ISL See *Inter-Switch Link*.

ISL hop

Considering all pairs of node ports (N-ports) in a fabric and measuring distance only in terms of Inter-Switch Links (ISLs) in the fabric, the number of ISLs traversed is the number of ISL hops on the shortest route between the pair of nodes that are farthest apart in the fabric.

JBOD (just a bunch of disks)

- IBM definition: See *non-RAID*.
- HP definition: A group of single-device logical units not configured into any other container type.

LBA See *logical block address*.

least recently used (LRU)

An algorithm used to identify and make available the cache space that contains the least-recently used data.

line card

See blade.

local fabric

In SAN Volume Controller, those storage area network (SAN) components (such as switches and cables) that connect the components (nodes, hosts, switches) of the local cluster together.

local/remote fabric interconnect

The storage area network (SAN) components that are used to connect the local and remote fabrics together.

logical block address (LBA)

The block number on a disk.

logical unit (LU)

An entity to which Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) commands are addressed, such as a virtual disk (VDisk) or managed disk (MDisk).

logical unit number (LUN)

The SCSI identifier of a logical unit within a target. (S)

longitudinal redundancy check (LRC)

A method of error checking during data transfer that involves checking parity.

LRC See longitudinal redundancy check.

LRU See least recently used.

LU See logical unit.

LUN See logical unit number.

LUN masking

A process that allows or prevents I/O to the disk drives through the host-bus-adapter (HBA) device or operating-system device driver.

managed disk (MDisk)

A Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) logical unit that a redundant array of independent disks (RAID) controller provides and a cluster manages. The MDisk is not visible to host systems on the storage area network (SAN).

managed disk group

A collection of managed disks (MDisks) that, as a unit, contain all the data for a specified set of virtual disks (VDisks).

managed space mode

An access mode that enables virtualization functions to be performed. See also image mode and unconfigured mode.

Management Information Base (MIB)

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) units of managed information that specifically describe an aspect of a system, such as the system name, hardware number, or communications configuration. A collection of related MIB objects is defined as a MIB.

mapping

See FlashCopy mapping.

master virtual disk

The virtual disk (VDisk) that contains a production copy of the data and that an application accesses. See also auxiliary virtual disk.

See megabyte. MB

MDisk

See managed disk.

megabyte (MB)

In decimal notation, 1 048 576 bytes.

mesh configuration

A network that contains a number of small SAN switches configured to create a larger switched network. With this configuration, four or more switches are connected together in a loop with some of the paths short circuiting the loop. An example of this configuration is to have four switches connected together in a loop with ISLs for one of the diagonals. The SAN Volume Controller does not support this configuration.

method

A way to implement a function on a class.

Metro Mirror

A synchronous copy service that enables host data on a particular source virtual disk (VDisk) to be copied to the target VDisk that is designated in the relationship.

MIB See Management Information Base.

migration

See data migration.

mirrorset

• IBM definition: See RAID-1.

1 Ι Ι HP definition: A RAID storageset of two or more physical disks that
maintain a complete and independent copy of the data from the virtual
disk. This type of storageset has the advantage of being highly reliable
and extremely tolerant of device failure. Raid level 1 storagesets are
referred to as mirrorsets.

namespace

The scope within which a Common Information Model (CIM) schema applies.

node One SAN Volume Controller. Each node provides virtualization, cache, and Copy Services to the storage area network (SAN).

node name

A name identifier associated with a node. (SNIA)

node port (N_port)

A port that connects a node to a fabric or to another node. N_ports connect to fabric ports (F_ports) or to other N_ports of other nodes. N_ports handle creation, detection, and flow of message units to and from the connected systems. N_ports are end points in point-to-point links.

node rescue

In SAN Volume Controller, the process by which a node that has no valid software installed on its hard disk drive can copy the software from another node connected to the same fibre-channel fabric.

non-RAID

Disks that are not in a redundant array of independent disks (RAID). HP definition: See *IBOD*.

N_port

See node port.

NWWN

See worldwide node name.

object In object-oriented design or programming, a concrete realization of a class that consists of data and the operations associated with that data.

object model

A representation, such as a diagram, of objects in a given system. Using symbols similar to standard flowchart symbols, an object model depicts the classes the objects belong to, their associations with each other, the attributes that make them unique, and the operations that the objects can perform and that can be performed on them.

object name

An object that consists of a namespace path and a model path. The namespace path provides access to the Common Information Model (CIM) implementation managed by the CIM Agent, and the model path provides navigation within the implementation.

object path

An object that consists of a namespace path and a model path. The namespace path provides access to the Common Information Model (CIM) implementation managed by the CIM Agent, and the model path provides navigation within the implementation.

offline

Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit or device that is not under the continual control of the system or of a host. online Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit or device that is under the continual control of the system or of a host.

operating set

In SAN Volume Controller, the set of nodes that are operating together to deliver storage services.

oversubscription

The ratio of the sum of the traffic that is on the initiator N-node connections to the traffic that is on the most heavily loaded Inter-Switch Links (ISLs), where more than one ISL is connected in parallel between these switches. This definition assumes a symmetrical network and a specific workload that is applied equally from all initiators and sent equally to all targets. See also *symmetrical network*.

partition

- IBM definition: A logical division of storage on a fixed disk.
- HP definition: A logical division of a container represented to the host as a logical unit.

partner node

The other node that is in the I/O group to which this node belongs.

partnership

In Global Mirror, the relationship between two clusters. In a cluster partnership, one cluster is defined as the local cluster and the other cluster as the remote cluster.

paused

In SAN Volume Controller, the process by which the cache component quiesces all ongoing I/O activity below the cache layer.

pend To cause to wait for an event.

petabyte (PB)

In decimal notation, 1 125 899 906 842 624 bytes.

PLUN See managed disk.

point-in-time copy

The instantaneous copy that the FlashCopy service makes of the source virtual disk (VDisk). In some contexts, this copy is known as a T_0 copy.

The physical entity within a host, SAN Volume Controller, or disk port controller system that performs the data communication (transmitting and receiving) over the fibre channel.

port ID

An identifier associated with a port.

power-on self-test

A diagnostic test that servers or computers run when they are turned on.

prepared

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when the mapping is ready to start. While in this state, the target virtual disk (VDisk) is offline.

preparing

In a Global Mirror relationship, the state that occurs when any changed write data for the source virtual disk (VDisk) is flushed from the cache. Any read or write data for the target VDisk is discarded from the cache.

primary virtual disk

In a Global Mirror relationship, the target of write operations issued by the host application.

property

In the Common Information Model (CIM), an attribute that is used to characterize instances of a class.

PuTTY

A free implementation of Telnet and SSH for Windows 32-bit platforms

PWWN

See worldwide port name.

qualifier

A value that provides additional information about a class, association, indication, method, method parameter, instance, property, or reference.

queue depth

The number of I/O operations that can be run in parallel on a device.

quorum disk

A managed disk (MDisk) that contains quorum data and that a cluster uses to break a tie and achieve a quorum.

quorum index

The pointer that indicates the order used to resolve a tie. Nodes attempt to lock the first quorum disk (index 0), followed by the next disk (index 1), and finally the last disk (index 2). The tie is broken by the node that locks them first.

rack A free-standing framework that holds the devices and card enclosure.

RAID See redundant array of independent disks.

RAID 0

- IBM definition: RAID 0 allows a number of disk drives to be combined and presented as one large disk. RAID 0 does not provide any data redundancy. If one drive fails, all data is lost.
- HP definition: A RAID storageset that stripes data across an array of disk drives. A single logical disk spans multiple physical disks, allowing parallel data processing for increased I/O performance. While the performance characteristics of RAID level 0 is excellent, this RAID level is the only one that does not provide redundancy. Raid level 0 storagesets are referred to as stripesets.

RAID 1

- SNIA dictionary definition: A form of storage array in which two or more identical copies of data are maintained on separate media.
- IBM definition: A form of storage array in which two or more identical copies of data are maintained on separate media. Also known as mirrorset.
- HP definition: See *mirrorset*.

RAID 5

- SNIA definition: A form of parity RAID in which the disks operate independently, the data strip size is no smaller than the exported block size, and parity check data is distributed across the array's disks. (S)
- IBM definition: See above.

HP definition: A specially developed RAID storageset that stripes data
and parity across three or more members in a disk array. A RAIDset
combines the best characteristics of RAID level 3 and RAID level 5. A
RAIDset is the best choice for most applications with small to medium
I/O requests, unless the application is write intensive. A RAIDset is
sometimes called parity RAID. RAID level 3/5 storagesets are referred to
as RAIDsets.

RAID 10

A type of RAID that optimizes high performance while maintaining fault tolerance for up to two failed disk drives by striping volume data across several disk drives and mirroring the first set of disk drives on an identical set.

redundant array of independent disks

A collection of two or more disk drives that present the image of a single disk drive to the system. In the event of a single device failure, the data can be read or regenerated from the other disk drives in the array.

redundant SAN

A storage area network (SAN) configuration in which any one single component might fail, but connectivity between the devices within the SAN is maintained, possibly with degraded performance. This configuration is normally achieved by splitting the SAN into two, independent, counterpart SANs. See also *counterpart SAN*.

reference

A pointer to another instance that defines the role and scope of an object in an association.

rejected

A status condition that describes a node that the cluster software has removed from the working set of nodes in the cluster.

relationship

In Global Mirror, the association between a master virtual disk (VDisk) and an auxiliary VDisk. These VDisks also have the attributes of a primary or secondary VDisk. See also auxiliary virtual disk, master virtual disk, primary virtual disk, and secondary virtual disk.

reliability

The ability of a system to continue to return data even if a component fails.

remote fabric

In Global Mirror, the storage area network (SAN) components (switches and cables) that connect the components (nodes, hosts, and switches) of the remote cluster.

roles Authorization is based on roles that map to the administrator and service roles in an installation. The switch translates these roles into SAN Volume Controller administrator and service user IDs when a connection is made to the node for the SAN Volume Controller.

SAN See storage area network.

SAN Volume Controller fibre-channel port fan in

The number of hosts that can see any one SAN Volume Controller port.

SATA See Serial Advanced Technology Attachment.

schema

A group of object classes defined for and applicable to a single namespace. Within the CIM Agent, the supported schemas are the ones that are loaded through the managed object format (MOF).

SCSI See Small Computer Systems Interface.

SCSI back-end layer

The layer in a Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI) network that performs the following functions: controls access to individual disk controller systems that are managed by the cluster; receives requests from the virtualization layer, processes them, and sends them to managed disks; addresses SCSI-3 commands to the disk controller systems on the storage area network (SAN).

SCSI front-end layer

The layer in a Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI) network that receives I/O commands sent from hosts and provides the SCSI-3 interface to hosts. SCSI logical unit numbers (LUNs) are mapped to virtual disks (VDisks) in this layer as well. Thus, the layer converts SCSI read and write commands that are addressed to LUNs into commands that are addressed to specific VDisks.

See subsystem device driver (SDD). SDD

SDRAM

See Synchronous Dynamic Random Access Memory.

secondary virtual disk

In Global Mirror, the virtual disk (VDisk) in a relationship that contains a copy of data written by the host application to the primary VDisk.

Secure Shell

A program to log in to another computer over a network, to execute commands in a remote machine, and to move files from one machine to another.

sequential VDisk

A virtual disk that uses extents from a single managed disk.

Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA)

The evolution of the ATA interface from a parallel bus to serial connection architecture. (S)

Serial ATA

See Serial Advanced Technology Attachment.

server In a network, the hardware or software that provides facilities to other stations; for example, a file server, a printer server, a mail server. The station making the request of the server is usually called the client.

Service Location Protocol (SLP)

In the Internet suite of protocols, a protocol that identifies and uses network hosts without having to designate a specific network host name.

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)

An Internet application protocol for transferring mail among users of the Internet. SMTP specifies the mail exchange sequences and message format. It assumes that the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is the underlying protocol.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

In the Internet suite of protocols, a network management protocol that is

used to monitor routers and attached networks. SNMP is an application-layer protocol. Information on devices managed is defined and stored in the application's Management Information Base (MIB).

SLP See Service Location Protocol.

Small Computer System Interface (SCSI)

A standard hardware interface that enables a variety of peripheral devices to communicate with one another.

SMI-S See Storage Management Initiative Specification.

SMTP See *Simple Mail Transfer Protocol*.

SNIA See Storage Networking Industry Association.

SNMP

See Simple Network Management Protocol.

SSH See Secure Shell.

stand-alone relationship

In FlashCopy and Global Mirror, relationships that do not belong to a consistency group and that have a null consistency group attribute.

A configuration command that is used to stop the activity for all copy stop relationships in a consistency group.

stopped

The status of a pair of virtual disks (VDisks) that have a copy relationship that the user has temporarily broken because of a problem.

storage area network (SAN)

A network whose primary purpose is the transfer of data between computer systems and storage elements and among storage elements. A SAN consists of a communication infrastructure, which provides physical connections, and a management layer, which organizes the connections, storage elements, and computer systems so that data transfer is secure and robust. (S)

Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S)

A design specification developed by the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) that specifies a secure and reliable interface that allows storage management systems to identify, classify, monitor, and control physical and logical resources in a storage area network. The interface is intended as a solution that integrates the various devices to be managed in a storage area network (SAN) and the tools used to manage them.

Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA)

An association of producers and consumers of storage networking products whose goal is to further storage networking technology and applications. See www.snia.org.

striped

Pertains to a virtual disk (VDisk) that is created from multiple managed disks (MDisks) that are in the MDisk group. Extents are allocated on the MDisks in the order specified.

stripeset

See RAID 0.

subsystem device driver (SDD)

An IBM pseudo device driver designed to support the multipath configuration environments in IBM products.

superuser authority

The level of access required to add users.

suspended

The status of a pair of virtual disks (VDisks) that have a copy relationship that has been temporarily broken because of a problem.

switch A network infrastructure component to which multiple nodes attach. Unlike hubs, switches typically have internal bandwidth that is a multiple of link bandwidth, and the ability to rapidly switch node connections from one to another. A typical switch can accommodate several simultaneous full link bandwidth transmissions between different pairs of nodes. (S) Contrast with *hub*.

symmetrical network

A network in which all the initiators are connected at the same level and all the controllers are connected at the same level.

symmetric virtualization

A virtualization technique in which the physical storage in the form of Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is split into smaller chunks of storage known as *extents*. These extents are then concatenated, using various policies, to make virtual disks (VDisks). See also *asymmetric virtualization*.

synchronized

In Global Mirror, the status condition that exists when both virtual disks (VDisks) of a pair that has a copy relationship contain the same data.

Synchronous Dynamic Random Access Memory (SDRAM)

A type of dynamic random access memory (DRAM) with features that make it faster.

system

A functional unit, consisting of one or more computers and associated software, that uses common storage for all or part of a program and also for all or part of the data necessary for the execution of the program. A computer system can be a stand-alone unit, or it can consist of multiple connected units.

terabyte

In decimal notation, 1 099 511 628 000 bytes.

topology

The logical layout of the components of a computer system or network and their interconnections. Topology deals with questions of what components are directly connected to other components from the standpoint of being able to communicate. It does not deal with questions of physical location of components or interconnecting cables. (S)

trigger

To initiate or reinitiate copying between a pair of virtual disks (VDisks) that have a copy relationship.

unconfigured mode

A mode in which I/O operations cannot be performed. See also *image mode* and *managed space mode*.

uninterruptible power supply

A device connected between a computer and its power source that protects the computer against blackouts, brownouts, and power surges. The

uninterruptible power supply contains a power sensor to monitor the supply and a battery to provide power until an orderly shutdown of the system can be performed.

unit identifiers (UIDs)

A unit identifier can be one of the following:

- 1. an integer expression whose value must be zero or positive
- 2. an * (asterisk) that corresponds to unit 5 for input or unit 6 for output
- 3. the name of a character array, character array element, or character substring for an internal file

unmanaged

An access mode that pertains to a managed disk (MDisk) that is not used by the cluster.

valid configuration

A configuration that is supported.

VDisk See virtual disk.

virtual disk (VDisk)

In SAN Volume Controller, a device that host systems attached to the storage area network (SAN) recognize as a Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) disk.

virtualization

In the storage industry, a concept in which a pool of storage is created that contains several disk subsystems. The subsystems can be from various vendors. The pool can be split into virtual disks that are visible to the host systems that use them.

virtualized storage

Physical storage that has virtualization techniques applied to it by a virtualization engine.

virtual storage area network (VSAN)

A fabric within the SAN.

vital product data (VPD)

Information that uniquely defines system, hardware, software, and microcode elements of a processing system.

VLUN See managed disk.

VSAN See virtual storage area network.

WBEM

See Web-Based Enterprise Management.

Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM)

A tiered, enterprise-management architecture that was developed by the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). This architecture provides the management design framework that consists of devices, device providers, the object manager, and the messaging protocol for the communication between client applications and the object manager.

worldwide node name (WWNN)

An identifier for an object that is globally unique. WWNNs are used by Fibre Channel and other standards.

worldwide port name (WWPN)

A unique 64-bit identifier associated with a fibre-channel adapter port. The WWPN is assigned in an implementation- and protocol-independent manner.

WWNN

See worldwide node name.

WWPN

See worldwide port name.

zoning

In fibre-channel environments, the grouping of multiple ports to form a virtual, private, storage network. Ports that are members of a zone can communicate with each other, but are isolated from ports in other zones.

Index

A accessibility keyboard 111	attaching (continued) System z9 (Linux) hosts 41 VMware hosts 103 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 57	commands (continued) hwmgr show components 15 hwmgr show devices 15 hwmgr show scsi 15
shortcut keys 111 adapter drivers /see also host attachment package (for	Windows 2000 and 2005 hosts 57 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69 Windows NT hosts 77 zSeries (Linux) hosts 41	set mode diag 14 wwidmgr -set adapter 14 wwidmgr -show adapter 14
AIX hosts) 23 installing on HP 9000 hosts 6 on HP AlphaServer hosts 14 on Intel (Linux) hosts 48 on Novell NetWare hosts 84 on pSeries or JS20 (Linux) hosts 32, 33 on Sun (Solaris) hosts 88, 89, 90	attachment requirements eServer (AIX) hosts 23 HP 9000 hosts 5 HP AlphaServer hosts 13 Intel (Linux) hosts 47 Novell NetWare hosts 83 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31 RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23	configuring AdvFS parameters 18 HBAs for Sun (Solaris) 90, 92, 93 HBAs for System z9 (Linux) hosts 42 HBAs for Windows 60, 61, 72, 73, 79 Intel (Linux) hosts 37, 38, 52, 53, 54 kernel SCSI parameters 16 OpenVMS 18
on VMware hosts 104 on Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58, 59 on Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70,	Sun (Solaris) hosts 87 System p5 (AIX) hosts 23 System z9 (Linux) hosts 41 VMware hosts 103 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 57	operating systems for AIX hosts 24 operating systems for HP 9000 hosts 6 operating systems for HP AlphaServer hosts 15
71 on Windows NT hosts 78 on eServer (AIX) hosts 24	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69 Windows NT hosts 77	operating systems for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49
on RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 24 on System p5 (AIX) hosts 24 supported	zSeries (Linux) hosts 41 audience xi	operating systems for Novell NetWare hosts 84 operating systems for pSeries and JS20
on HP 9000 hosts 6, 13 on HP AlphaServer hosts 6, 13 on Intel (Linux) hosts 48	B BladeCenter	(Linux) hosts 33, 49 operating systems for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94
on Novell NetWare hosts 84 on pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 32	/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23 BladeCenter hosts 31 BladeCenter platforms	setting Sun host parameters 94 operating systems for VMware hosts 104
on Sun (Solaris) hosts 88 on System z9 (Linux) hosts 42 on VMware hosts 104	Intel (Linux) hosts 47 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31 VMware hosts 104	operating systems for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 operating systems for Windows 2003
on Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58 on Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70 Windows 2003 hosts 70	64-bit hosts 73 operating systems for Windows NT hosts 80 operating systems for zSeries (Linux)
on Windows NT hosts 78 on zSeries (Linux) hosts 42	С	hosts 43 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 36, 37,
adapters /see also host bus adapters (HBAs) 58, 70	Canadian electronic emission notice 116 chyg command 27	38, 52, 54 System z9 (Linux) hosts 44 zoning host systems
AdvFS parameters configuring 18 AIX	cluster software ServiceGuard 9, 21 clustering support	AIX hosts 24 zSeries (Linux) hosts 37, 38, 44, 53, 54
/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23 /see also IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23	AIX hosts 26 HP 9000 host 9	conventions xiii
/see also IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 23 support 23	HP AlphaServer hosts 21 Intel (Linux) hosts 35, 44, 50 NetWare hosts 85	D device driver device specific module
attaching HP 9000 hosts 5 HP AlphaServer hosts 13	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 35, 44, 50 Sun (Solaris) hosts 98	(SDDDSM) Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74
IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23 IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23 IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 23	VMware hosts 105 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 64 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 75 Windows NT hosts 82	device drivers /see also adapter drivers 6 discovering VDisks
Intel (Linux) hosts 47 Novell NetWare hosts 83 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31	Windows NT hosts 82 zSeries (Linux) hosts 35, 44, 50 commands hwmgr scan scsi 15	OpenVMS 19 domain IDs setting for HP 9000 hosts 11
pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31 Sun (Solaris) hosts 87		setting for HP 9000 hosts 11

drivers	F	host bus adapters (HBAs) (continued)
/see also adapter drivers 59, 71, 78	-	about HBAs
DS4000 79	failover protection	for HP 9000 hosts 5, 13
DS4000 (FAStT) Redundant Dual Active	for AIX hosts 24	for HP AlphaServer hosts 5, 13
Controller (RDAC) driver 63	for HP 9000 hosts 6	for Intel (Linux) hosts 47
DS4000 adapter driver 59, 71, 78	for HP AlphaServer hosts 15	for Novell NetWare hosts 83
DS4000 host bus adapters (HBAs)	FCC (Federal Communications	for pSeries and JS20 (Linux)
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58	Commission) electronic emission notice 115	hosts 32
configuring adapter drivers 60, 72	Federal Communications Commission	for Sun (Solaris) hosts 87
installing adapter drivers 59	(FCC) electronic emission notice 115	for System z9 (Linux) hosts 41
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70	fibre-channel	for VMware hosts 104
installing adapter drivers 71	host systems 1	for Windows 2000 and 2003
Windows NT hosts 77	targets and LUNs 3	hosts 58
configuring adapter drivers 79	firmware	for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70
installing adapter drivers 78	eServer (AIX) hosts 24	for Windows NT hosts 77
dynamic binding Sun hosts with JNI HBAs 90	HP 9000 hosts 6, 13	for zSeries (Linux) hosts 41 configuring
dynamic increase of VDisk size	HP AlphaServer hosts 6, 13	on Sun (Solaris) hosts 90, 92, 93
AIX hosts 27	Intel (Linux) hosts 48	on System z9 (Linux) hosts 42
dynamic pathing	Novell NetWare hosts 84	on Windows 2000 and 2003
HP 9000 hosts 7, 8	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 32	hosts 60, 61, 72
pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34, 50	RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 24	on Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 72,
Sun (Solaris) hosts 97	Sun (Solaris) hosts 88	73
VMware hosts 105	System p5 (AIX) hosts 24	on Windows NT hosts 79
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 63, 64	System z9 (Linux) hosts 42	for eServer (AIX) hosts 24
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74	VMware hosts 104	for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 24
Windows NT hosts 81	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58	for System p5 (AIX) hosts 24
zSeries (Linux) hosts 34, 50	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70	installing
	Windows NT hosts 78	on Intel (Linux) hosts 32, 48
_	zSeries (Linux) hosts 42	on Novell NetWare hosts 84
E	FlashCopy	on pSeries and JS20 (Linux)
electronic emission notices 115	restrictions 4	hosts 32, 48
European Union (EU) 116	French Canadian electronic emission	on Sun (Solaris) hosts 88
Federal Communications Commission	notice 116	on VMware hosts 104
(FCC) 115		on Windows 2000 and 2003
French Canadian 116	G	hosts 58
German 117	<u> </u>	on Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70
Industry Canada 116	Geographically Dispersed Sites Clustering	on Windows NT hosts 78
International Electrotechnical	Service 64	on zSeries (Linux) hosts 42
Commission (IEC) 116	German	host operating systems
Japanese Voluntary Control Council	radio protection notice 117	about host operating systems for HP 9000 hosts 5
for Interference (VCCI) 116	Global Mirror	for HP AlphaServer hosts 13
Korean Government Ministry of	restrictions 4	for Intel (Linux) hosts 47
Communication (MOD) 116	guide	for Novell NetWare hosts 83
New Zealand 116	who should read xi	for pSeries and JS20 (Linux)
Taiwan 117		hosts 31
United Kingdom 116	Н	for Sun (Solaris) hosts 87
emphasis in text xiii		for System z9 (Linux) hosts 41
Emulex host bus adapters (HBAs)	HACMP cluster software 26	for VMware hosts 103
pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 32	HBA drivers	for Windows 2000 and 2003
Sun (Solaris) hosts 92	/see also adapter drivers 6, 13	hosts 57
installing adapter drivers 89 SAN boot configuration 99	Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts	for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58, 65	known restrictions and problems 10	for Windows NT hosts 77
configuring adapter drivers 61	worldwide port names	for zSeries (Linux) hosts 41
installing adapter drivers 59	(WWPNs) 107 Hewlett-Packard 9000 hosts	configuring
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70, 75	/ see also HP 9000 hosts 5	HP 9000 hosts 6
configuring adapter drivers 73	/ see also HP AlphaServer hosts 13	HP AlphaServer hosts 15
installing adapter drivers 71	high availability monitors	IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 24
eServer hosts 31, 41	HP 9000 host 9	IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 24
European Union electronic emission	host attachment script (for AIX hosts) 24	IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 24
notice 116	host bus adapter drivers	Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49
EZ Fibre configuration utility 90	/see also adapter drivers 6, 13	Novell NetWare hosts 84
-	host bus adapters (HBAs)	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49
	/see also adapter drivers,	Sun (Solaris) hosts 94
	firmware 6, 13	VMware hosts 104

host operating systems (continued) configuring (continued) Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 Windows NT hosts 80 zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 for eServer (AIX) hosts 23 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23 for System p5 (AIX) hosts 23 Novell NetWare	HP AlphaServer hosts (continued) configuring the kernel SCSI parameters 16 creating volumes and disks 15 failover protection 15 firmware 6, 13 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 5, 13 installing adapter drivers 14 load balancing support 20	IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts (continued) host attachment script 24 host bus adapters (HBAs) 24 known restrictions and problems 27 mapping VDisks to host 24 multipathing support 25, 26 installing multipathing driver 24 operating systems 23 configuring 24 SAN boot support 27
running VMware 103 Windows 2000 and 2003	mapping VDisks to host 15 multipathing support 20	worldwide port names (WWPNs) 24 107
running VMware 103	configuration maximums 20 installing multipathing driver 15	IBM subsystem device driver device
host systems attaching	operating systems	specific module (SDDDSM) Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74
HP 9000 hosts 5	configuring 15	IBM Subsystem Device Driver Device
HP AlphaServer hosts 13	support details 13	Specific Module (SDDDSM) Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 64
IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23 IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23	SAN boot support 21 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 15	IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts
IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 23	HP-UX	adapter drivers 24
Intel (Linux) hosts 47 Novell NetWare hosts 83	/see also HP 9000 hosts 5	attaching 23
pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31	HS20 and HS40 host bus adapters (HBAs)	attachment requirements 23 cluster support 26
Sun (Solaris) hosts 87	Intel (Linux) hosts 47	creating volumes and disks 24
System z9 (Linux) hosts 41 VMware hosts 103	VMware hosts 104 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58	dynamic increase of VDisk size 27 failover protection 24
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 57	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70	firmware 24
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69	hwmgr scan scsi 15	host attachment script 24
Windows NT hosts 77 zSeries (Linux) hosts 41	hwmgr show components 15 hwmgr show devices 15	host bus adapters (HBAs) 24 known restrictions and problems 27
fibre channel 1	hwmgr show scsi 15	mapping VDisks to host 24
iSCSI 1		multipathing support 25, 26
HP 9000 hosts adapter drivers	1	installing multipathing driver 24 operating systems 23
supported 6, 13	■ i5	configuring 24
attaching 5	/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23	SAN boot support 27
attachment requirements 5 cluster support 9	IBM DS4000 (FAStT) Redundant Dual	worldwide port names (WWPNs) 24
creating volumes and disks 6	Active Controller (RDAC) driver 63 IBM eServer (AIX) hosts	IBM TotalStorage Geographically
dynamic pathing 7, 8	adapter drivers 24	Dispersed Sites Clustering Service 64
failover protection 6 firmware 6, 13	attaching 23	IBM TotalStorage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)
host bus adapters (HBAs)	attachment requirements 23 cluster support 26	Sun (Solaris) hosts 94
supported 5, 13	creating volumes and disks 24	coexistence with VERITAS Volume
installing adapter drivers 6 load balancing 7,8	dynamic increase of VDisk size 27	Manager 97 with Solaris clustering 98
mapping VDisks to host 6	failover protection 24 firmware 24	IEC (International Electrotechnical
multipathing support 7, 8 coexistance of SDD and	host attachment script 24	Commission) electronic emission notice 116
PVLinks 8	host bus adapters (HBAs) 24	information center xiii
configuration maximums 8	known restrictions and problems 27 mapping VDisks to host 24	installation script files
installing multipathing driver 6 operating systems	multipathing support 25, 26	eServer (AIX) hosts 23 RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23
configuring 6	installing multipathing driver 24	System p5 (AIX) hosts 23
support details 5	operating systems 23 configuring 24	installing
preferred paths 7, 8 SAN boot support 8, 9	SAN boot support 27	adapter drivers (device drivers) Intel (Linux) hosts 48
setting domain IDs 11	worldwide port names (WWPNs) 24, 107	Novell NetWare hosts 84
volume groups 8	IBM RS/6000 (AIX) hosts	on HP 9000 hosts 6
worldwide port names (WWPNs) 6 HP AlphaServer hosts	adapter drivers 24	on HP AlphaServer hosts 14 pSeries or JS20 (Linux) hosts 32,
adapter drivers	attaching 23 attachment requirements 23	33
supported 6, 13	cluster support 26	Sun (Solaris) hosts 88, 89, 90
attaching 13 attachment requirements 13	creating volumes and disks 24	VMware hosts 104 Windows 2000 and 2003 59
cluster support 21	dynamic increase of VDisk size 27 failover protection 24 firmware 24	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58

installing (continued)	K	Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) driver
adapter drivers (device drivers)	keyboard 111	(continued)
(continued)	keyboard shortcuts 111	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 64
Windows 2003 64-bit 71 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70, 71	Korean	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74 Microsoft SAN Boot Clusters (MSCS) 67
Windows NT 78	electronic emission notice 116	Mirror
Windows NT hosts 78		and Windows 2003 hosts 64
HBAs for Intel (Linux) hosts 32, 48		MSCS 64
HBAs for Novell NetWare 84	L	multipath subsystem device driver (SDD)
HBAs for pSeries and JS20 (Linux)	limitations	for AIX hosts 24
hosts 32, 48	AIX hosts 27	HP 9000 hosts 6, 7, 8
HBAs for Sun (Solaris) hosts 88	Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 10	coexistance with PVLinks 8
HBAs for System z9 (Linux) hosts 42	Intel (Linux) hosts 55	HP AlphaServer hosts 15, 20
HBAs for VMware 104	System z9 (Linux) hosts 45	Intel (Linux) hosts 50
HBAs for Windows 58, 70 HBAs for Windows NT hosts 78	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 66	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34, 50 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97, 98
HBAs for zSeries (Linux) hosts 42	zSeries (Linux) hosts 45	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 63,
Intel (Linux) hosts	Linux /see also Intel (Linux) hosts 47	65
adapter drivers	/see also pSeries and JS20 (Linux)	coexistance with RDAC driver 63
supported 48	hosts 31	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74, 75
attaching 47	/see also System z9 (Linux) hosts 41	Windows NT hosts 81
attachment requirements 47	/see also zSeries (Linux) hosts 41	zSeries (Linux) hosts 34, 50
BladeCenter platforms 47	load balancing	multipath-tools package
cluster support 35, 44, 50	HP 9000 hosts 7, 8	maximum configurations 43
configuring storage 37, 38, 52, 53, 54	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34, 50	multipath tools package for Linux 43
creating volumes and disks 33, 49 dynamic pathing 34, 50	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97	multipath-tools package for Linux (mp-tools) 43
firmware 48	zSeries (Linux) hosts 34, 50	multipathing support
host bus adapters (HBAs)	load balancing support with Tru64 device driver.	AIX hosts 24
supported 47	HP AlphaServer hosts 20	for AIX hosts 26
installing adapter drivers 48	logical volume manager (LVM)	HP 9000 hosts 7, 8
installing HBAs 32, 48	FlashCopy and Metro Mirror	HP AlphaServer hosts 20
known restrictions and problems 55	support 4	Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 50
load balancing 34, 50	Logical Volume Manager (LVM) 27	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 34
mapping VDisks to host 33, 49	logical volume manager for Linux	49 Sun (Salaria) haata 04 07
multipathing support 34, 50 configuration maximums 50	(LVM) 43	Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 97 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62
installing multipathing driver 33,	logical volumes	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73
49	maximum configurations 43 LUNs	Windows NT hosts 80
number of disks 51	checking for limitations	with IBM TotalStorage Multipath
operating systems	HP 9000 hosts 5	Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 97
configuring 33, 49	HP AlphaServer hosts 13	with logical volume manager for
support details 47	Intel (Linux) hosts 47	Linux (LVM) 43
preferred paths 34, 50	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31	System z9 (Linux) hosts 43
SAN boot support 51	Sun (Solaris) hosts 87	zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 with Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO)
setting queue depths 35, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 33,	System z9 (Linux) hosts 41	driver
49, 108	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 57 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62,
International Electrotechnical Commission	Windows NT hosts 77	64
(IEC) electronic emission notice 116	zSeries (Linux) hosts 41	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74
Series	multiple path configurations on	with multipath subsystem device
/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23	AIX 26	driver (SDD) 7, 8, 34, 50
	LVM	HP 9000 hosts 7, 8
	/see also Logical Volume	HP AlphaServer hosts 20
J	Manager 27	Intel (Linux) hosts 34, 50 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34
apanese		Sun (Solaris) hosts 97
electronic emission notice 116	RЛ	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62,
[NI host bus adapters (HBAs)	M	63
Sun (Solaris) hosts 90	Metro Mirror	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74
installing adapter drivers 88	restrictions 4	Windows NT hosts 81
parameter settings 92 SAN boot configuration 99	Microsoft	with multipath-tools package 43
VDisk mapping 97	/see Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts, Windows NT hosts 57	with multipath-tools package for
(S20	/see Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69	Linux 43
/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23	Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) 64	with Novell Storage Services (NSS)
	Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO)	Novell NetWare hosts 84 with PVLinks 7, 8
	driver 65, 75	widi i v Links 7, 0

multipathing support (continued) with SDD 25	Р	QLogic host bus adapters (HBAs) (continued)
with SDDPCM 25	p5	Novell NetWare hosts 83
with Tru64 device driver 20	/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts
with VERITAS Volume Manager 97	/see also IBM System p5(AIX)	hosts 32
Sun (Solaris) hosts 97	hosts 23	Sun (Solaris) hosts 93
with VERITAS Volume Manager	parameters (1.72)	installing adapter drivers 90
Dynamic Multipathing 62	/see also configuring 61, 73 persistent binding	SAN boot configuration 100
with VMware multipathing software	Sun hosts with JNI HBAs 90	setting maximum LUNs 93
VMware hosts 105	physical volumes	VMware hosts 104
zSeries (Linux) hosts 43	maximum configurations 43	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58, 65 configuring adapter drivers 60, 72
	POWER technology-based hosts 31	installing adapter drivers 59
N	preferred paths	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70, 75
	VDisks 7, 8	installing adapter drivers 71
Netfinity DS4000 host bus adapters	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34,	Windows NT hosts 77
(HBAs) Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts	50	configuring adapter drivers 79
configuring adapter drivers 61	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97	installing adapter drivers 78
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts	zSeries (Linux) hosts 34, 50 problems	queue depths
configuring adapter drivers 73	AIX hosts 27	Intel (Linux) hosts 35, 51
NetWare	Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 10	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 35, 36,
/see also Novell NetWare hosts 83	Intel (Linux) hosts 55	51 zSeries (Linux) hosts 35, 36, 51
New Zealand electronic emission	System z9 (Linux) hosts 45	25c11c5 (Elitax) 1105t5 55, 50, 51
statement 116	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 66	
notices	zSeries (Linux) hosts 45	R
legal 113 Novell Cluster Services cluster	pSeries (ADOL - 22	RDAC driver 63
software 85	/see also IBM eServer (AIX) hosts 23	coexistance with SDD 63
Novell NetWare hosts	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts adapter drivers	Red Hat
adapter drivers	supported 32	/see also Intel (Linux) hosts 47
supported 84	attaching 31	/see also pSeries and JS20 (Linux)
as guest systems for VMware 103	attachment requirements 31	hosts 32
attaching 83	BladeCenter platforms 31	related information xiii
attachment requirements 83	cluster support 35, 44, 50	requirements
cluster support 85 firmware 84	configuring storage 36, 37, 38, 52, 54	eServer (AIX) hosts 23 HP 9000 hosts 5
host bus adapters (HBAs)	creating volumes and disks 33, 49 firmware 32	HP AlphaServer hosts 13
supported 83	host bus adapters (HBAs)	Intel (Linux) hosts 47
installing adapter drivers 84	supported 32	Novell NetWare hosts 83
installing HBAs 84	installing HBAs 32, 48	pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 31
multipathing support 84	mapping VDisks to host 33, 49	RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 23
operating systems	multipathing support 34	Sun (Solaris) hosts 87
configuring 84 support details 83	configuration maximums 34	System p5 (AIX) hosts 23
SAN boot support 86	installing multipathing driver 33,	System z9 (Linux) hosts 41 VMware hosts 103
worldwide port names (WWPNs) 84	49	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 57
Novell Storage Services (NSS) 84	number of disks 35 operating systems	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 69
NSS (Novell Storage Services) 84	configuring 33, 49	Windows NT hosts 77
number of disks	support details 31	zSeries (Linux) hosts 41
Intel (Linux) hosts 51	SAN boot support 35	restrictions
pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 35	setting queue depths 35, 36, 51	AIX hosts 27
System z9 (Linux) hosts 44 zSeries (Linux) hosts 44	worldwide port names (WWPNs) 33,	Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 10
ZSeries (Linux) nosts 44	49	Intel (Linux) hosts 55 System z9 (Linux) hosts 45
	pSeries or JS20 (Linux) hosts installing adapter drivers 32, 33	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 66
0	publications	zSeries (Linux) hosts 45
open-systems hosts	ordering xv	restrictions for open system hosts
fibre-channel 1	PV links	FlashCopy 4
OpenVMS	/ see also PVLinks 7	Metro Mirror 4
assigning VDisks 19	PVLinks 7, 8, 9	
configuring 18	coexistance with SDD 8	S
discovering VDisks 19		
operating systems	Q	SAN boot support
/see also host operating systems, specific operating systems 23	OI agis host has adapted (IIDA)	AIX hosts 27 HP 9000 hosts 9
ordering publications xv	QLogic host bus adapters (HBAs) Intel (Linux) hosts 47	HP AlphaServer hosts 21

SAN boot support (continued) Intel (Linux) hosts 51	Sun (Solaris) hosts (continued) installing adapter drivers 88, 89, 90	U United Kingdom electronic emission
Novell NetWare hosts 86 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 35 Sun (Solaris) hosts 98	installing HBAs 88 load balancing 97 mapping VDisks to host 94	notice 116
configuring 98, 99, 100	multipath subsystem device driver	V
System z9 and zSeries hosts 44	(SDD) 98	V
VMware hosts 106	multipathing support 97, 98	VDisks
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts	coexistence of SDD and VERITAS Volume Manager 97	boot
configuring 65 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts	installing multipathing driver 94	HP 9000 hosts 8
configuring 75	operating systems	dynamically increasing size 27 HP 9000 hosts 8
Windows NT hosts 82	configuring 94	mapping
SDD	support details 87	to AIX hosts 24
/see also IBM TotalStorage Multipath	preferred paths 97	to HP 9000 hosts 6
Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 98	SAN boot support 98, 99, 100	to HP AlphaServer hosts 15
SDDDSM	static port binding 98	to Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49
/see also IBM subsystem device	VERITAS Volume Manager 98, 99,	to pSeries and JS20 (Linux)
driver device specific module	100	hosts 33, 49
(SDDDSM) 74 /see also IBM Subsystem Device	worldwide port names (WWPNs) 94, 109	to Sun (Solaris) hosts 94
Driver Device Specific Module	support	to Windows 2000 and 2003
(SDDDSM) 64	Web sites xv	hosts 62 to Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73
/see also subsystem device driver	supported adapter drivers	to Windows NT hosts 80
device specific module	/see also adapter drivers 6, 13	to zSeries (Linux) hosts 43
(SDDDSM) 65, 75	supported host operating systems	maximum configurations 26
ServiceGuard cluster software 9, 21	/see also host operating systems,	using Microsoft Multipath I/O
set mode diag 14	specific operating systems 23	(MPIO) driver 64, 74
settings	SUSE	using multipath subsystem device
/see also configuring 61, 73	/see also Intel (Linux) hosts 47	driver (SDD) 8, 20, 34, 50, 63, 81
SGeFF 9 shortcut keys 111	/see also pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 32	using VMware multipathing
Solaris	/see also System z9 (Linux) hosts 41	software 105
/see also Sun (Solaris) hosts 87	/see also zSeries (Linux) hosts 41	preferred paths 7, 8 pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 34,
SPARC platform 87	System z9 (Linux) hosts	50 Enter and 1320 (Enter) nosts 34,
static port binding 98	adapter drivers	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97
Sun hosts with JNI HBAs 90	supported 42	zSeries (Linux) hosts 34, 50
StorPort HBA driver 61, 73	attaching 41	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97
subsystem device driver (SDD)	attachment requirements 41	using multipath subsystem device
AIX hosts 26	configuring HBAs 42	driver (SDD) 26
with AIX hosts 25	configuring storage 44 firmware 42	using multipath subsystem device
subsystem device driver device specific module (SDDDSM)	host bus adapters (HBAs)	driver path control module
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 65	supported 41	(SDDPCM) 26 Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 63, 64
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 75	known restrictions 45	Windows 2000 and 2005 nosts 05, 64 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 74
subsystem device driver path control	multipathing support 43	Windows NT hosts 81
module (SDDPCM)	configuration maximums 43	VERITAS Cluster Server 98
AIX hosts 26	number of disks 44	VERITAS Volume Manager 95, 96, 98,
for AIX hosts 24	operating systems	99, 100
with AIX hosts 25	support details 41	coexistence with SDD 97
Sun (Solaris) hosts	SAN boot support 44	FlashCopy and Metro Mirror
adapter drivers supported 88		support 4
attaching 87	Т	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97
attachment requirements 87	■	VERITAS Volume Manager Dynamic Multipathing Mode 9200 62
cluster support 98	Taiwan electronic emission notice 117	VIO
configuring HBAs 90	targets and LUNs 3	support for IBM System p5 27
Emulex HBAs 92	text emphasis xiii TimeOutValue registry 82	virtual disks
JNI HBAs 90, 92	trademarks 114	/see also VDisks 27
QLogic HBAs 93	Tru64 device driver	VMware hosts
creating volumes and disks 94	HP AlphaServer hosts 20	adapter drivers
dynamic pathing 97	Tru64 UNIX	supported 104
firmware 88 host bus adapters (HBAs)	/see also HP AlphaServer hosts 13	attaching 103
supported 87	TruCluster Server software 21	attachment requirements 103
IBM TotalStorage Multipath		BladeCenter platforms 104 cluster support 105
Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 94		dynamic pathing 105

hos bus adapters (HBAs) supported 104 installing flabs 104 multipathing support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 104, 109 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) hosts 8 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 systems (WWTNs) 105 statisting of the worldwide port names (WWTNs) 105 statisting shapter drivers 105 supported 78 statehing 79 statehment requirements 87 BladeCurther platforms 88 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 79 creating volumes and disks 82 dynamic pathing 63, 64 most bus adapter drivers 88 supported 158 installing adapter drivers 88 supported 158 installing adapter drivers 105 systems (WWTNs) 107 systems (WWTNs)	VMware hosts (continued)	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts (continued)	WWPN
supported 104 installing adapter drivers 104 installing adapter drivers 104 installing adapter drivers 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WYPNs) 104, 194 VWomen entilipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 78 sa guest systems for VMware sulfipathing 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 47 who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 78 sa guest systems for VMware sulfipathing support 82 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 installing adapter drivers Support 44 configuring HBAs 58 known nestrictions and problems 6 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipath support 62, 63, 64 installing adapter drivers supported 77 san boot support 82 configuring 80 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 configuring 62 support details 75 SAN boot support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipath support 64 multipathing support 105 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 configuring 80 configuring	firmware 104	configuring HBAs 72, 73	/see also worldwide port names
installing adapter drivers 104 multipathing support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Series platforms 104 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 105 outside support 105 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 75 untilipath driver 75 multipath dr	host bus adapters (HBAs)		(WWPNs) 107
installing adapter drivers 104 multipathing support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Series platforms 104 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 105 outside support 105 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 75 untilipath driver 75 multipath dr	supported 104	dynamic pathing 74	
installing HBAs 104 multipathing support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 166 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Series platforms 104 VMware multipathing software volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 yuphots 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Series platforms 104 VMware multipathing software volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 25 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 25 supported S8 sus (Solaris) hosts 97 subject of the series of Solaris (Solaris) hosts 98 supported S8 as guest systems for VMware 103 statching 57 attachment requirements 57 Blade-Center platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuration maximums 81 host bus adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 66, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 68 mapping VDisks to host 60 Miltipathing support 62 configuration maximums 81, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 configuring 62 support 64 miltipathing support 62 support 64 miltipathing support 62 support 64 miltipathing driver 63 configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VVRITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 Service splatforms 50 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 70 may 100 hosts 6 of the Ph 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 intel (Linux) hosts 33, 40 pust 64 pu	installing adapter drivers 104		
supported 70 support 105 configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Seriers platforms 104 Whavare multipathing software 105 volume groups 11P 9000 hoses 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 support details 69 SAN boot support 70 configuration maximums 74 installing adapter drivers supported 88 supported 88 sugnest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 supported 78 supported 78 supported 88 sugnest systems for VMware 103 attachment requirements 57 BladsCenter platforms 89 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapter strivers 88 known restrictions and problems 64 mapping WDisks to host 43 supported 48 supported 48 supported 58 installing adapter drivers 89 supported 62 configuring HBAs 78 mapping WDisks to host 80 supported 58 installing adapter drivers 80 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 78 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 configuring adapter drivers 62 configuring 62 support 64 coefficiency for the worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Herly-Lix or	host bus adapters (HBAs)	Y	
configuration maximums 105 operating systems configuring 114 support details 103 and potentiames (WWPNs) 104, 109 stores hadrotream 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 will path ship system device driver (SDD) 75 multipath ships system device driver (SDD) 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 and pert drivers 8 supported 58 installing adapter drivers 18 installing ada		±	^
operating systems configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWTNS) 104, 109 Scriss platforms 104 VWavae multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Whyshis xv Who should road this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 bosts adapter drivers supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 suspens systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 BladsCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 installing adapter drivers supported 58 configuring HBAs 80, 61, 72 installing adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 41 installing adapter drivers Supported 41 installing adapter drivers Supported 41 installing adapter drivers Supported 41 installing adapter drivers supported 41 installing adapter drivers supported 41 installing adapter drivers supported 41 installing adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 58 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 59 installing adapter drivers Supported 5	. 0 11		xSeries platforms
configuring 104 support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 series platforms 104 VMware multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 sun Series platforms 104 VMware multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 sun (Solaris) hosts 97 supported solar divers supported 58 suggest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 subset supported 58 ladactenter platforms 58 lost supported 42 configuring HBAs 90, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 80 supported 78 ladactenter platforms 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 78 latachment requirements 57 lisaling adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers supported 58 installing adapter drivers (SDD) 65 multipathing support 82 configuring HBAs 90, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 80 adapters (HBAs) supported 78 installing adapter drivers supported 78 installing adapter drivers 80 installing adapter driver 95 lisaling 41 lisaling support 82 configuring HBAs 90, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 80 adapters (HBAs) supported 79 lisaling support 82 lisaling adapter drivers 95 lisaling adapter drivers 95 lisaling multipathing support 82 lisaling support 82 lisaling support 82 lisaling lisaling HBAs 97 lisaling lisaling HBAs 97 lisaling	9		Novell NetWare hosts 83
support details 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104.109 %Series platforms 104 VWaver multipathing support 74 configuration maximums 74 installing audiputathing driver 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 75 series platforms 70 Windows 2003 end 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for Volvare 103 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 shoot bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 81, 61 firmware 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 80 dynamic pathing 81 firmware 78 host bus adapters drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for Server (AID) hosts 107 for HP 40 phaseever hosts 104 for HP 40 phaseever hosts 104 for HP 40 phaseever hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for Server (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID) hosts 107 for FS 4000 (AID)		9	VMware hosts 104
support defails 103 SAN boot support 106 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 Series platforms 104 WWare multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 custer support 64 as guest systems for YMware attaching 75 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 supported 58 configuration maximum 81 and apper drivers supported 42 attaching 77 attachment requirements 41 attaching 77 attachment requirements 77 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 installing adapter drivers 80 installing adapte	0 0		Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 58
SAN boot support 10e worldwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 X5eries platforms 104 VMware multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xv who should road this guide xi windows NT hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xv who should road this guide xi windows NT hosts 8 supported 58 saguest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 BiadaCenter platforms 58 Choster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing multipathing griver 62 configuring HBAs 63 known restrictions and problems mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirrow support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing griver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 44 operating systems configuring 80 supported 47 or HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for HM Spatch the 44 operating systems configuring 80 supported 44 operating systems configuring 80 supported 47 or HP AlphaServer hosts 80 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 44 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 operating systems configuring 80 supported 41 operating systems configuring 80 support 64 operating systems configuring 80 su	1.1	1	
wortdwide port names (WWPNs) 104, 109 x ferries platforms 104 VMover multipathing support 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 SaN boot support 82 supported 58 Sun (Solaris) hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 58 cluster support 64 configurating HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 80 first supported 58 installing adapter drivers 90 installing adapter drivers 105	SAN boot support 106	multipath subsystem device driver	
xSeries platforms 104 Whave multipathing software 105 volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 ypaths HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 sa guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 BladcCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 65 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 65 supported tealis 57 SAN boot support 66 multipathing support 65 supported tealis 57 SAN boot support 66 multipathing apport 67 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 78 installing adapter drivers 8 installing multipathing driver 80 originating HBAs 78 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 65 SAN boot support 65 SAN boot support 66 for HP AlphaServer 88 installing multipathing driver 88 installing multipathing driver 88 installing multipathing driver 88 installing multipathing driver 89 installing HBAs 78 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 64 multipathing support 65 multipathing support 66 multipathing support 66 multipathing and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 multipathing support 82 configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 78 installing HBAs 78 known restrictions 45 mapping VDisks to host 49 multipathing driver 78 installing multipathing driver 80 oringuration maximums 41 installing adapter drivers 80 installing hapter driv	worldwide port names	(SDD) 75	WIRdows 1V1 110313 77
VMware multipathing systems or configuring 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldware 103 attaching 87 attachinent requirements 57 Bladscenter platforms 8 configuring HBAs 78 supported 78 assay those supported 78 attachinent requirements 57 bloot support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 supported 78 attaching 87 attachinent requirements 57 bloot support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 supported 79 attachine group of 65 multipathing support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 firmware 58 supported 65 multipathing support 64 firmware 58 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing from 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 65 SAN boot support 64 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 intel (Linux) hosts 33, 5un (Solaris) hosts 43 2series (Linux) hosts 33, 5un (Solaris) hosts 43 2series (Linux) hosts 34 Windows NT hosts 80 Windo	(WWPNs) 104, 109	multipathing support 74	
VMware multipathing systems or configuring 73 support details 69 SAN boot support 75 worldware 103 attaching 87 attachinent requirements 57 Bladscenter platforms 8 configuring HBAs 78 supported 78 assay those supported 78 attachinent requirements 57 bloot support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 supported 78 attaching 87 attachinent requirements 57 bloot support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 supported 79 attachine group of 65 multipathing support 64 firmware 58 custer supported 58 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 firmware 58 supported 65 multipathing support 64 firmware 58 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing from 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 65 SAN boot support 64 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 intel (Linux) hosts 33, 5un (Solaris) hosts 43 2series (Linux) hosts 33, 5un (Solaris) hosts 43 2series (Linux) hosts 34 Windows NT hosts 80 Windo	xSeries platforms 104	configuration maximums 74	7
volume groups HP 9000 hosts 8 Vpaths HP 9000 hosts 6 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xV who should read this guide xi windows NT hosts 80, 203 64-bit hosts 43 supported 77 installing alapter drivers 78 installing galapter drivers 78 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing galapter drivers 8 installing	VMware multipathing software 105	_	_
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 cluster support 82 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 8 supported 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 8 supported 58 installing adapter drivers 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for AlX hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Service of worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for 88/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Service Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 33, 49 (MP-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Service 40 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for 88/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Service 40 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for 88/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Service 40 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for 88/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Service 40 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 for 88/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packa		0 1 0	zoning host systems
vpaths HP 9000 hosts 8 Sun (Solaris) hosts 97 Web sites xV who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 installing adapter drivers 5, 99 installing HBAs 68 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 coexistance of 5DD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 cinstalling multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 constiguration sations of the plant of t			•
Web sites xV who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 known restrictions and problems 66 firmware 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 coparating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlert-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Series platforms 58 (HIM) hosts 33, 49 more support 43 maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 noriginal 43 support 44 operating systems configuring 43 support 44 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 mixtows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 6			
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi who should read this guide xi who should read this guide xi who should read this guide xi who should read this guide xi adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware attaching 57 Bladecenter platforms 57 Bladecenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 59 installing tadapter drivers 59 installing tadapter drivers 59 installing tadapter drivers 59 installing tadapter driver 58 installing multipathing topyort 64 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing support 64 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 voorldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HE 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Windows 107 for Windows 107 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62 low 108 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 installing adapter	-	1.1	
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing HBAs 78 configuration maximums 63 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 65 installing multipathing support 62 (a.6.6.6.6.7) (a.6.6.6.7) (a.6.6.6.7) (b.6.6.7) (b.		= =	
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 78 attachment requirements 77 cluster support 82 configuring HBAs 79 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 78 and the pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 78 and the pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 78 and the pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 78 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 af-bit hosts adapter rivers adapter drivers adapter drivers adapter drivers 8 and 2003 and 2003 and 2003 and 2003 hosts 62 windows 2003 af-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 af-bit hosts 73 windows 2003 af-bit hosts 84 for pseries and 10sks 40 and 2003 hosts 62 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter drivers 8 adapter dr	Sun (Solaris) hosts 97		
We sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 78 attaching 77 attachment requirements 77 cluster support 82 configuring HBAs 79 creating volumes and disks 80 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 180 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 supported 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 180 supported 58 installing HBAs 78 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 64 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing support 81 configuring 80 support details 77 sAN boot support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration support 65 voperating systems configuring 62 support details 57 sAN boot support 65 verification support 65 verification support 66 vorification for the worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for first (Linux) hosts 33, 49 (108 for Novel Member 27 (108 for Novel Member 28 (108 for Novel Member 29 (1			
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 a guest systems for VMware 103 altaching 57 altachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58 known restrictions and problems mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 supported 478 attachment requirements 77 cluster support 82 configuring 81 supported 778 installing adapter drivers 78 onfiguration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 attachment requirements 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 stores (Linux) hosts 43 installing multipathing driver operation maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operation maximums 8		Windows NT hosts	Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62
Web sites xv who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 a guest systems for VMware 103 altaching 57 altachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58 known restrictions and problems mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 supported 478 attachment requirements 77 cluster support 82 configuring 81 supported 778 installing adapter drivers 78 onfiguration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 attachment requirements 41 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 stores (Linux) hosts 43 installing multipathing driver operation maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operation maximums 8	W	adapter drivers	Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73
who should read this guide xi Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing multipathing driver of 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 58 installing multipathing driver of 69 of Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2013 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2013 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries (Linux) hosts 43 staching 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 78 supported 42 attaching 14 attachment requirements 41 configuring torage support 81 configuring 4BAs 79 creating volumes and disks 80 dynamic pathing 81 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 81 installing adlipathing driver of 80 supported 78 installing adlipathing driver of 80 supported 42 attachment requirements 41 con		supported 78	Windows NT hosts 80
Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 57 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attachment requirements 77 attaching 81 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 77 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 ataching 41 attachment requirements 41 configuring support 82 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 attaching 41 attachment requirements 41 configuring support 82 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for effer very (AIX) hosts 107 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for HP AlphaServer hosts 104 for Eserver (AIX) hosts 107 for HP AlphaServer hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 unltipathing upport 81 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems configuring 80 supported 42 attachment requirements 41 configuring 62 support 43 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 80 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems c		attaching 77	zSeries (Linux) hosts 43
adapter drivers supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 62 dirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 Series platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attaching 70 attaching 80 support details 77 for AIX hosts 24 for eserver (AIX) hosts 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eserver (AIX) hosts 107 for AIX hosts 107 for H9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for BM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 84 for psecial multipathing driver of operating systems configuring 43 support details 41 stachment requirements 41 configuration requirements 41 configuration readings 80 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver of operating systems configuring to 80 support details 77 for IM hosts 107 for H9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for Im 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for Im 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 1	9	attachment requirements 77	zSeries (Linux) hosts
supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 80 dynamic pathing 81 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 77 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 mistalling adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter driver 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of 5DD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support details 57 SAN boot support details 57 SAN boot support details 57 SAN boot support details 67 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 Series platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers suppopted 70 attachment requirements 41 configuring storage 37, 38, 44, 53, 5 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 77 installing adapter driviers 78 installing adapter driviers 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 104 for Sceries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 42 attachment requirements 41 configuring storage 37, 38, 44, 53, 5 firmware 42 host bus adapters (HBAs) support details 77 show bus adapters (HBAs) support details 70 shot bus adapters (HBAs) support details 80 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 supported 77 installing adapter drivers 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 80 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hos		±	
supported 58 as guest systems for VMware 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 Blade-Center platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring plaths 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 64 moultipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 Series platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers 69 Blade-Center platforms 70 creating volumes and disks 80 dynamic pathing 81 firmware 78 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 77 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing support 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (ADX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing HBAs 78 wultipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 configuration maximums 81 installing adapter drivers 98 multipathing driver 80 operating systems 2000 for SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit ho	± .		1
as guest systems for VMWare 103 attaching 57 attachment requirements 57 bladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 maltipathing support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 62 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for BM System ps (AIX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for BM System ps (AIX) hosts 107 for SAN boot support 64 for SCRICAL Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 Series platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 41 configuring 41 configuring storage 37, 38, 44, 53, 5 creating volumes and disks 43 firmware 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing multipathing driver 80 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing multipathing maximums 46 installing multipathing driver 40 multipathing support 42 multipathing driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for BM System ps (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, or Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104 hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104 hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104 hosts	supported 58	0 0	. * *
attachment requirements 57 BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing adapter drivers 68 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 40 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for BM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Nowell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts	as guest systems for VMware 103	9	
BladeCenter platforms 58 cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 63 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 XSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 installing HBAs 78 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 4 number of disks 44 operating systems configuring 43 supported 41 installing HBAs 42 known restrictions 45 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 supported 470 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM Support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HM Werth-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for IBM Support 42 number of disks 44 operating systems configuring 43 supported 41 installing HBAs 42 known restrictions 45 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing driver 4 number of disks 44 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 4 number of disks 44 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing adapter (IP-UX) hosts 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (attaching 57		<u> </u>
cluster support 64 configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 maltipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for HP 9000 hosts 6 configuring of 2 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 108 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers SAP boot support 81 configuring 62 support details 77 SAN boot support 80 supported tails 77 SAN boot support 80 supported tails 77 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 43 49 Vindows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers 78 installing adapter drivers 78 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 40 For HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 43, 108 for Series platforms 78 installing adapter drivers 78 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 support details 77 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 40 For HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 multipathing support 42 supported 77 installing adapter adriver 88 multipathing driver 80 multipathing support 81 configuring 80 supported 77 installing multipathing driver 90 perating systems configuring 80 suppo	attachment requirements 57		
custer support configuring HBAs 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems of mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 of r AIX hosts 24 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuring 80 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hill (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 41 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for 2Series (Linux) hosts 33 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for 2Series (Linux) hosts 43	BladeCenter platforms 58		
configuring FIAS 60, 61, 72 creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HHP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 4)phaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Istel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun Goolaris) hosts 43 windapting HBAs 42 known restrictions 45 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 4)phaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Istel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for SS-6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70	cluster support 64	1.1	
creating volumes and disks 62 dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 for AIX hosts 107 for Eleveltt-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 41 for Series and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 mapping VDisks to host 80 multipathing support 81 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installi	* *		
dynamic pathing 63, 64 firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums (WWPNs) configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HM AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HM AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 ad-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Zeries (Linux) hosts 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 80,00 for HPP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 34, 40 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 multipathing	0 0	9	11
firmware 58 host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Novell NetWare hosts 107 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Sol (Galisi) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Zeries (Linux) hosts 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 number of disks 44 operating systems configuration maximums 61 installing multipathing driver 80 installing multipathing driver 80 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sim (Solaria) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts	9	11 0	9
host bus adapters (HBAs) supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 43 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 34 adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 mapping VDisks to host 43 multipathing support 43 configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 4PlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 34, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wultipathing support 43 configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 43 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 81 numltipathing support 42 operating systems configuration maximums 81 installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuration maximums 81 numltipathing driver 4 oper	.*		
supported 58 installing adapter drivers 58,59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 109 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for Solvell NetWare hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 Installing multipathing driver 4 operating systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwindows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43		configuration maximums 81	mapping VDisks to host 43
installing adapter drivers 58, 59 installing HBAs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 sunday systems configuring 80 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 107 for Eserver (AIX) hosts 107 for Hevelt-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 ad-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwindows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries Linux) hosts 62 installing multipathing driver 4 number of disks 44 operating systems configuring 43 support details 41 SAN boot support 4 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 25eries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	installing multipathing driver 80	multipathing support 43
installing HBÅs 58 known restrictions and problems 66 mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 62, 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70		operating systems	configuration maximums 43
support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 support details 77 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 for AIX hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Zeeries (Linux) hosts 43 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Zeeries (Linux) hosts 44 operating systems configuring 43 support details 41 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 42 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 42 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 42 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 42 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 42 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 solar provide tails 41 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 solar provide tails 41 SAN boot support details 41 SAN boot	9 1	configuring 80	installing multipathing driver 43
mapping VDisks to host 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 SAN boot support 82 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 73 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidner show adapter 14	9		number of disks 44
milaphing vDisks to lost 62 Mirror support 64 multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 80, 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Zeeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer s-bow adapter 14	<u>*</u>		operating systems
multipath subsystem device driver (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 108 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 24 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 25 reise Linux) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for SS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 25 cluster support 35, 44, 50	11 0		
worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 (SDD) 65 multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 107 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Vindows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 2zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 SAN boot support 44 setting queue depths 35, 36, 51 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 2zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 For IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for Windows Adapter 14		•	
multipathing support 62, 63, 64 coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for AIX hosts 24 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 37 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 343 wwindows 2003 64-bit hosts 43 wwindows 2003 adapter 144	multipath subsystem device driver		
coexistance of SDD and RDAC driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 XSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for eServer (AIX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 2 zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 for HEWelett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HEWelett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HEWelett-Packard (HP-UX) hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for Windows 2003 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50	(SDD) 65		- 1
driver 63 configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for Hewlett-Packard (HP-UX) zSeries Linux) hosts cluster support 35, 44, 50 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP 9000 hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43	multipathing support 62, 63, 64		0 I
configuration maximums 63, 64 installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 hosts 107 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidner show adapter 14	coexistance of SDD and RDAC		
installing multipathing driver 62 operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for HP 9000 hosts 6 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for ZSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer show adapter 14	driver 63		
installing multipathing driver operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for HP AlphaServer hosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43	configuration maximums 63, 64		cluster support 35, 44, 50
operating systems configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 Ior HP Apphaserver nosts 15 for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer show adapter 14	9		
configuring 62 support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 add 2003 hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer show adapter 14	9 1 9	*	
support details 57 SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 support details 57 for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108 for Novell NetWare hosts 84 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer -show adapter 14	1 0 7	for IBM System p5 (AIX) hosts 107	
SAN boot support 65 VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 Ior Novell NetWare hosts 64 for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43	0 0	for Intel (Linux) hosts 33, 49, 108	
VERITAS Cluster Service 64 worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 solve pseries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33, 49 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43		for Novell NetWare hosts 84	
worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 syphose worldwide port names (WWPNs) 62, 108 for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43	* *	for pSeries and JS20 (Linux) hosts 33,	
108 xSeries platforms 58 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 system of RS/6000 (AIX) nosts 107 for Syn (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 for VMware hosts 104, 109 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer show adapter 14		49	
xSeries platforms 58 for Sun (Solaris) hosts 94, 109 xSeries platforms 58 for VMware hosts 104, 109 Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 wwidmer show adapter 14	1	for RS/6000 (AIX) hosts 107	
Windows 2003 64-bit hosts adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 symptom of the Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43			
adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 for Windows 2000 and 2003 hosts 62, 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43			
adapter drivers supported 70 attaching 69 attachment requirements 69 BladeCenter platforms 70 108 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43			
supported 70 for Windows 2003 64-bit hosts 73 attaching 69 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 attachment requirements 69 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 BladeCenter platforms 70 wwidner show adapter 14	adapter drivers		
attaching 69 for Windows NT hosts 80, 108 attachment requirements 69 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 BladeCenter platforms 70 wwidmgr show adapter 14	supported 70		
attachment requirements 69 for zSeries (Linux) hosts 43 BladeCenter platforms 70 wwidmgr show adapter 14	attaching 69		
BladeCenter platforms 70 For ZSeries (Linux) nosts 43	attachment requirements 69		
WWIGMOT -Show adapter 14	-		
	cluster support 75	wwiumgr -snow adapter 14	

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller Host Attachment User's Guide Version 4.1.0

Phone No.

Publication No. SC26-7905-00						
Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?						
	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied	
Overall satisfaction						
How satisfied are you that	t the information	in this book is:				
	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied	
Accurate Complete Easy to find Easy to understand Well organized Applicable to your tasks						
Please tell us how we can	improve this boo	k:				
Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No						
When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you. IBM or any other organizations will only use the personal information that you supply to contact you about the issues that you state on this form.						
Name		Ad	dress			
Company or Organization	Company or Organization					

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You SC26-7905-00



Cut or Fold Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



Hadaddanddaladdaladddalllaaadlaall

NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

International Business Machines Corporation Information Development Department 61C 9032 South Rita Road Tucson, Arizona 85755-4401



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

IBM.

Printed in USA

SC26-7905-00



Spine information:

IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller

SAN Volume Controller Host Attachment User's Guide Version 4.1.0